# **Table of Contents**

| 1. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Quick Start Guide  | 2                        |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1.1. Eyeglass Service Account Minimum Privileges  | 24                       |
| 1.2. Eyeglass Warm Standby Direct Sync Guide  |                          |
| 1.3. Legacy - Eyeglass Warm Standby with SynclQ Guide   |                          |
| 2. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Upgrade Guide  |                          |
| 3. Eyeglass VMware MarketPlace Deployment Guide   |                          |
| 4. Eyeglass Search & Recover Installation and Upgrade Guide   |                          |
| 4.1. Search & Recover Hyper-V Deployment  |                          |
| 4.2. How to Migrate Eyeglass Search Appliance Index from ECA OpenSuse 15.1 t                        | o OpenSuse 15.3 OS97     |
| 5. Eyeglass Golden Copy Installation and Upgrade Guide  | 111                      |
| 6. Eyeglass Clustered Agent vAPP Install and Upgrade Guide (Ransomware Defende Performance Auditor) | er, Easy Auditor,<br>129 |
| 6.1. Eyeglass Clustered Agent ECA Hyper-V Installation Guide  |                          |
| 6.2. Mini-ECA Installation and Configuration to Enable Distributed Cluster Mode                     |                          |
| 7. Eyeglass Clustered Agent vApp Install Guide (Ransomware Defender for ECS)                        |                          |
| 8. Eyeglass Hyper-V Installation Guide  | 207                      |
| 9. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Quick Start Guide and Upgrade Guide for RHEL and                     | Centos 7.6, 7.7 and      |
| 8.x   |                          |
| 10. Eyeglass Probe PowerScale installation guide  |                          |
| 10.1. How to Install Video  |                          |
| 10.2. System Overview   |                          |
| 10.3. System Requirements Eyeglass and Probe  |                          |
| 10.4. Installation Overview   |                          |
| 10.5. Install Eyeglass Appliance  | 247                      |
| 10.6. Add PowerScale probe license keys to the appliance  |                          |
| 10.7. Add PowerScale clusters to the appliance  |                          |
| 10.8. Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe Authentication Token                                       |                          |
| 10.9. Configure Eyeglass Firewall for Probe Service Broker Connection                               | 253                      |
| 10.10. Import Eyeglass Probe to UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive                                  | 256                      |
| 10.11. Deploy Eyeglass Probe  |                          |
| 10.12. Configure Eyeglass Probe UIM Group of PowerScale clusters for monitoring                     | ng265                    |
| 10.13. Eyeglass Probe Administration  | 266                      |
| 10.14. Troubleshooting section  | 268                      |
| 10.15. Test Alarm/Event flow to with PowerScale Devices UIM   | 270                      |
| 10.16. Eyeglass Probe Technical Support Playbook  | 271                      |
| 11. Eyeglass Installation Procedure - Proxmox kvm qcow  | 278                      |
| 12. Ransomware Defender Enterprise Airgap Agent VM Install Guide                                    |                          |

# 1. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Quick Start Guide

Home Top

- Introduction to this Guide
- System Requirements
- IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING ADDING CLUSTERS TO EYEGLASS READ-ME FIRST
- Supported OneFS releases
- Feature Release Compatibility
- Eyeglass Scalability Limits
- Eyeglass Firewall Port Requirements
- Download Eyeglass (Mandatory)
- Deploy the Eyeglass Appliance (Mandatory)
- Steps to Deploy the OVF with vSphere Client (Mandatory)
- Setup Time zone and NTP (Mandatory)
- Eyeglass Initial Configuration (Mandatory)
- Login to the Eyeglass UI (Mandatory)
- Install License (Mandatory)
- Add PowerScale Clusters (Mandatory)
  - NOTE: Password special characters and length.
  - NOTE: Cluster DNS Setup and Add Cluster to Inventory:
  - IMPORTANT: After Discovery of a Cluster's SynclQ policies all Eyeglass configuration jobs are disabled automatically

- IMPORTANT: Clusters on source target must be in the support feature matrix
- IMPORTANT: Before you add a Cluster to Eyeglass verify SynclQ FQDN Name resolution
- Adding Clusters for Eyeglass
- Inventory Collection After Clusters are added
- Pre-requisite for Enabling Configuration Replication
- Enable Jobs for Configuration Replication (Mandatory)
- Configure SMTP (Mandatory)
- Configure Email Recipients (Mandatory)
- How to Change Eyeglass Appliance Networking Configuration (yast network utility) after OVA deployment (Optional)

# Introduction to this Guide

Use this document to get your new Eyeglass installation up and running fast with all the best options.

For planning DR and understanding design choices with Eyeglass use the Eyeglass Start Here First Guide

#### System Requirements

- 1. vSphere 6.0 ESX host or higher or hyper-v with vhdx appliance appliance requires
  - a. vcenter supported deployment clients
    - i. vcenter 6.5 Flex or html5
    - ii. vcenter 6.7 Flex client (vmware bug broke OVF with html webUI)
    - iii. vcenter 7.0.1 Build: 17491160

### b. NOTE: All other tools are unsupported. Requires vapp property support.

- 2. 4 vCPU
- 3. 16 GB RAM (RAM must be upgraded based on the scalability table here)
- 30G OS partition plus 80 GB disk Total disk size in VMware 110G
- Latency from admin PC to Eyeglass VM GUI < 15 ms ping times
- 6. AD Auth provider in System zone for RBAC and other SID to user resolution API requirements
- 7. Chrome Browser (Required), Browser must support Websockets, Internet Explorer is not supported.
  - a. The browser must not disable 3rd party cookies required for authentication sessions and file downloads.
- 8. Eyeglass Port Requirements: Eyeglass-Ports-Requirements

# IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING ADDING

# CLUSTERS TO EYEGLASS READ-ME FIRST

- 1. ONEFS 8.2 This release disabled API and SSH access to the SSIP and introduces a range of SSIP addresses in a subnet. IF YOU ARE CURRENTLY USING AN SSIP THE BELOW STEPS ARE MANDATORY. NOTE: Requires Release 2.5.5 or later
  - a. Upgrade to the latest release using this guide.
  - b. Best Practise is to have an dynamic smartconnect IP pool in system zone for the IP used by Eyeglass to provide an HA connection to the cluster
  - c. Login to Eyeglass open the Inventory Icon

- d. Right click the 8.2 cluster and select the Edit option
- e. Enter any IP in the dynamic pool range
- f. Re-enter the password for the eyeglass service account
- g. Click submit
- h. Repeat for each 8.2 cluster in the inventory tree.
- i. Done.
- j. NOTE: Dynamic IP pools will fail the IP address to a new node if the node fails or is taken down for maintenance.
- k. NOTE: CSRF patch referenced below still applies to 8.2 clusters, that do not support session based authentication across the cluster and this blocks use for smartconnect for load balancing Eyeglass API's.
- 2. NOTE: For release 2.5.5 and later, you must use a node IP with dynamic IP allocation in subnet with pool in the System Access zone to add PowerScale clusters to Eyeglass (typically the management subnet). Using SmartConnect Zones is no longer supported due to PowerScale CSRF patch which disabled basic authentication and does not share session token between PowerScale nodes. For more details please refer to Technical Advisory #15 and Technical Advisory #17.

•

#### Supported OneFS releases

1. Please refer to the Release Notes for the Eyeglass PowerScale Edition version that you are installing.

#### Feature Release Compatibility

1. Please refer to the Release Notes for the Eyeglass PowerScale Edition version that you are installing.

#### **Eyeglass Scalability Limits**

- 1. Please refer to the Eyeglass Admin Guide Scalability limits.
  - 2.

# Eyeglass Firewall Port Requirements

Please refer to the firewall ports table.

# Video Tutorial - Installing Eyeglass for PowerScale

The following link provides a video tutorial outlining how to install Eyeglass for PowerScale, add clusters and an overview of features. New Eyeglass Installation

For a new Eyeglass installation, complete the following steps:

# Download Eyeglass (Mandatory)

1. Download Eyeglass OVF, VHDX from Superna web site following instructions here Latest Appliance Download

2.

# Deploy the Eyeglass Appliance (Mandatory)

Eyeglass is delivered in an OVF format for easy deployment in your vCenter environment. Deploy the OVF and then follow the wizard to setup networking for this Linux appliance. You will need to know:

- 1. subnet and network required so that appliance will have IP connectivity to the PowerScale clusters that it's managing, and the users that are using it
- 2. IP address for the appliance
- 3. (Optional) SmartConnect Zone for management access to the cluster
- 4. Gateway
- 5. DNS server
- 6. NTP Server

IMPORTANT: If you are using hostname or FQDN for the target cluster in your SynclQ policies or SmartConnect Zone for adding clusters to Eyeglass, the DNS information entered here must be able to resolve back to a discovered cluster IP Address (should resolve to a SynclQ SmartConnect Zone IP pool IP address), in order for Eyeglass to perform configuration replication. If the hostname cannot be resolved, Eyeglass will not create the associated configuration replication Job.

# Steps to Deploy the OVF with vSphere

Client (Mandatory)

OVF Deployment steps :

**Step 1**: Download an OVF zip file from Latest Appliance Download.

**Step 2**: Unzip the contents of the zip file from Step 1 onto a computer with vSphere web or Windows client installed.

Step 3 : Login to the vCenter with appropriate login credentials.

**Step 4 :** Single click on VMware vSphere client on the Desktop. Login with appropriate login credentials.

**Step 5**: Once logged in to VMware client, you can see different Menus on the top left of the application. Next, go to the File menu and select Deploy OVF Template.

**Step 6 :** Browse to the location of OVF files you've downloaded and unzipped in step 1 and 2. Select OK and then Next.

Next, You will see the OVF template details. Verify the details and proceed by selecting Next. Notice download size to be under allocated disk size limit.

**Step 7 :** Choose a unique name for the virtual machine and select Inventory location for the deployed template. Once done, select Next.

**Step 8 :** Select the host/cluster where you want to run the deployed template and then Next.

Step 9 : Select the Resource pool within which you wish to deploy the template.

**Step 10 :** Select a destination storage for virtual machine files, select Next

**Step 11 :** Select Disk Format for the datastore you selected in previous step.

**Step 12 :** Enter the networking properties for the Eyeglass appliance VM in the OVF properties display. Replace with correct settings for your environment.

IMPORTANT: If you are using hostname for the target in your SynclQ policies, the DNS information entered here must be able to resolve this host back to the Cluster IP Address in order for Eyeglass to perform configuration replication. If the hostname cannot be resolved, Eyeglass will not create the associated configuration replication Job.

**Step 13 :** When done, verify your settings and deploy the OVF **After deployment:** 

**Step 1** : Power On the virtual machine.

- 1. The Eyeglass appliance is deployed with following default admin user password:
- 2. ssh to eyeglass vm as admin
  - a. **sudo systemctl status superna-on-boot** (enter admin password and verify the first boot process completes)
  - b. default login and password: admin/3y3gl4ss
- 3. Can also be used to login to the Eyeglass UI or SSH
- 4. NOTE: It is highly recommended to reset the default password after the appliance is deployed.

#### Setup Time zone and NTP (Mandatory)

- 1. Setup NTP server (published online list here)
- 2. Setup Timezone for log time alignment and SynclQ operations.
- 3. Follow Animated GIF below to set using YAST
- 4. ssh as admin user,
- 5. sudo -s
- 6. Enter admin password
- 7. yast



1.

a.

#### Eyeglass Initial Configuration (Mandatory)

Your Eyeglass initial configuration steps are:

- 1. Login to the Eyeglass UI
- 2. Install License
- Create Eyeglass service account first for each PowerScale cluster with Minimum Privileges (if not done configure Clusters in Eyeglass using root user)
- 4. Add Clusters

#### Login to the Eyeglass UI (Mandatory)

To login to the Eyeglass web UI, enter the following URL into your browser (Chrome preferred) replacing <Eyeglass IP address> with the real IP address assigned to the appliance:

1. https://<Eyeglass IP address>

- 2. You have 2 options for login authentication:
- 3. Login with appliance credentials use the admin user and password configured on the appliance
- 4. Default user/password: admin / 3y3gl4ss

### Install License (Mandatory)

- 1. Retrieve your Eyeglass License keys (instructions provided here).
- 2. Upload the license zip file provided to you by Superna:
- 3. IMPORTANT: Do not unzip the license file. Upload the zip file.



4.

5. IMPORTANT: You will be asked to accept the Eyeglass EULA and Phone Home after selecting the Upload button. License will not be loaded unless EULA is accepted.

|                |      |          | Remove |
|----------------|------|----------|--------|
| License Holder | Туре | Quantity | Expiry |
|                |      |          |        |
|                |      |          |        |
|                |      |          |        |
|                |      |          |        |
|                |      |          |        |
|                |      |          |        |
| Import License |      |          |        |

7. Done

# Add PowerScale Clusters (Mandatory)

1. NOTE: No Auto Refresh Inventory View use the refresh button bottom right of the GUI

- 2. This window does not auto refresh after adding a cluster. You must click the refresh button bottom right to verify when a cluster has finished discovery. This process can take 5-10 minutes typically.
- 3. NOTE: Password special characters and length.
  - a. These characters cannot be used [ { (any bracket open) , } ]
    ) (any bracket close), ~ (tilde), ` (back quote), \ (back slash),
    / (forward Slash), & , \*, \$ this is not a full list and more special characters may not work. Password length should be < = 20 characters.</li>
- 4. NOTE: Cluster DNS Setup and Add Cluster to Inventory:
  - a. If discovery takes a very long time to complete (> 10 minutes), then to check to make sure that cluster configuration data can resolve external URL. Cloud pools use a URL to a storage bucket, and if this URL can not complete a DNS lookup to an IP address, then API calls that discover cloud pools will take too long to complete and will timeout the cluster discovery. Make Sure all URL and DNS resolution is functioning on the cluster.
- 5. IMPORTANT: After Discovery of a Cluster's SynclQ policies all Eyeglass configuration jobs are disabled automatically
  - a. Configuration Replication Jobs for zones, shares, exports and NFS alias protected by SynclQ Policy are automatically created and in the USERDISABLED state after successful provisioning in Eyeglass. Enabling these Jobs will be part of the installation steps.
- 6. IMPORTANT: Clusters on source target must be in the support feature matrix

- a. PowerScale cluster replication pairs must be running a supported OneFS version as documented in the System Requirements / Feature Release Compatibility matrix.
- 7. IMPORTANT: Before you add a Cluster to Eyeglass verify SynclQ FQDN Name resolution
  - a. This step is important to allow Eyeglass to automatically build configuration replication jobs correctly. Eyeglass will resolve the FQDN of the SynclQ policy and then compare the returned ip address to all PowerScale clusters added to the Eyeglass appliance. If no match is found, Config Sync jobs will fail to be added to the jobs window, until name resolution works correctly. A system alarm is also raised that indicates no matching clusters found for the SynclQ policies on Cluster named X.
- 8. Adding Clusters for Eyeglass
  - a. PowerScale clusters must be added to Eyeglass using a node IP from an IP pool in the System Access Zone. Do not use the SSIP.
  - b. Create the eyeglass service account: To create an Eyeglass service account with minimum privileges follow the instructions provided in Eyeglass Service Account Minimum Privileges.
  - c. To verify SynclQ target host FQDN:
    - i. Login to Eyeglass via ssh
    - ii. Validate that the FQDN of SynclQ policy targets will resolve correctly on Eyeglass
    - iii. nslookup <FQDN>
    - iv. NOTE: If it does not resolve validate DNS and make sure DNS can resolve this FQDN or Eyeglass will not auto detect SynclQ replication relationships
  - d. From the Eyeglass UI add the PowerScale Clusters between which Eyeglass will be replicating the share and export configuration data

|    | 1 <b>(</b><br>2 <b>(</b> | Eyeglass Main Menu<br>Add Managed Device | )<br>) |            |        |
|----|--------------------------|--|--------|------------|--------|
|    | 🛃 Add Ma                 | naged Device                             |        |            |        |
|    | 3                        | SmartConnect Service IP:                 | 9090   | >          |        |
|    | 4<br>5                   | Username:<br>Password:                   | 0000   | $\bigcirc$ |        |
|    | 6<br>7                   | Maximum RPO Value:                       |        | >          | Submit |
|    |                          |  |        |            |        |
| e. |                          |  |        |            |        |

- f. Note:
  - i. If you get authentication failure when clicking submit. It can be one of these issues:
  - ii. Bad password (make sure before looking at next causes)
  - iii. SmartConnect Service must be IP address format. Also it must be an IP pool from System Access zone for PAPI API calls to be supported.
  - iv. If your cluster is running original 7.2.x.x, 8.0.0.0, 8.0.0.1, 8.0.0.2 the TLS security protocols allowed weaker security algorithms and key sizes. Eyeglass 1.9 OVF and later has hardened security settings. In this case you may need to edit /opt/superna/java/jre1.8.0\_05/lib/security/java.security and comment out the line "jdk.tls.disabledAlgorithms=MD5, SHA1, DSA, RSA keySize < 2048, SSLv2Hello, SSLv3, TLSv1, TLSv1.1"
    - 1. After editing this file an Eyeglass sca service restart is required
    - 2. systemctl restart sca
- g. Maximum RPO Value is the Recovery Point Objective for the cluster in minutes. If you are using the RPO feature, this target is used during RPO analysis. More information about

Eyeglass RPO analysis can be found in Feature Overview - RPO Trending and Reporting.

- 9. After the cluster(s) are added successfully passing the authentication validation verify Inventory collection
- 10. Inventory Collection After Clusters are added
  - a. Once the PowerScale is added, Eyeglass will automatically run an inventory task to discover the PowerScale components. When completed, the discovered inventory can be seen in the Inventory View.
  - b. Click the Inventory Icon and verify the inventory completes as per below

| Nodes                         | Calc Status |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| – 🗁 Managed Devices           | •           |
| EMC-Isilon2                   | •           |
| 🗄 🗂 Configuration             | •           |
| +- 🗂 nfs                      | •           |
| - Ċ smb                       | •           |
| - 🗇 shares                    | •           |
| + 🗁 System:IBMTSM             | •           |
| + 🗁 System:NewShare11November | •           |
| + 🛅 System:SMB-Share-88170981 | •           |
| + 🛅 System:SuzyIsilon2        | •           |
| ─                             | •           |

# Enable Eyeglass Jobs (Mandatory)

- Newly discovered SynclQ policies will now appear as unconfigured in the Jobs Icon. You must set the job type as auto (mirrors configuration data between clusters) DFS (only used for DFS mounted SMB shares), and Skip config (special case when no configuration sync is required). NOTE: Once you set the type they will be userdisabled and must be enbled for production use.
- Enable the jobs in the auto or DFS sections of the jobs icon with check box and bulk action menu to enable them. See section below on the steps.
- 3. Optional:

- a. Enable File system job to sync snapshot schedules to DR
- b. Zone job to sync access zones to DR (consult support before enabling not required in most cases)
- c. Zone and Pool Failover Readiness job is disabled and only enabled if you plan to use IP Pool or Access Zone failover feature. Consult the Getting started guide to decide on the failover mode.
- d. NOTE: Do not enable or run quota jobs, these are managed automatically by the failover process. These jobs should not be enabled or run.

#### Pre-requisite for Enabling Configuration Replication

1. If you have an Active - Active Replication Topology (for data),

confirm that you do not have an unsupported share or NFS Alias environment described in the diagram below:



- 2.
- Review Eyeglass Admin Guide Jobs description to understand what the Configuration Replication Jobs will do
- 4. Review Eyeglass Admin Guide for Configuration Replication Prerequisites

5. Review how Eyeglass determines uniqueness\_for configuration items and what properties are replicated.

## Enable Jobs for Configuration Replication (Mandatory)

 Next step is to enable your Share, Export, NFS Alias (AUTO) Jobs for Configuration Replication. This can be done on a Job by Job basis by following these steps:



- 2. LNO
- 3. Select the Configuration Replication Job to be enabled.

| 💄 Job Definitions | Job Name                                    | Policy                 | Туре        | Last Run Date        | State          |
|-------------------|---|------------------------|-------------|----------------------|----------------|
| 🕵 Running Jobs    | Configuration Replication: Share, Expension | ort, Alias replication | (AUTOMATIC) |                      |                |
|                   | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob            | EyeglassRunbo          | AUTO        | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23 | 🌠 ОК           |
|                   | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob           | . EyeglassRunbo        | AUTO        | 20/10/2015, 16:05:33 | 👸 Policy Disa  |
|                   | Configuration Replication: DFS mode         | (AUTOMATIC)            |             |                      |                |
|                   | Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror                   | dfs9_mirror            | AUTODFS     | n/a                  | Policy Disa    |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_dfs9                       | dfs9                   | AUTODFS     | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23 | 🌇 ОК           |
|                   | E Failover: Quota Failover (RUN MANUA)      | LLY)                   |             |                      |                |
|                   | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob            | EyeglassRunbo          | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 15:10:32 | 🚰 ОК           |
|                   | Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror_quotas            | dfs9_mirror            | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:56:59 | Policy Disa    |
|                   | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob.          | . EyeglassRunbo        | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 16:06:14 | Policy Disa    |
|                   | Cluster-1-7201_dfs9_quotas                  | dfs9                   | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:08:36 | 🐴 ОК           |
|                   | Failover Readiness (AUTOMATIC)              |                        |             |                      |                |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_Cluster-1-7201              |                        | READINESS   | 21/10/2015, 13:30:05 | 🐴 ОК           |
|                   | El Cluster-1-7201_Cluster2-7201             |                        | READINESS   | 21/10/2015, 13:30:06 | 🚰 ОК           |
|                   | E Failover: Runbook Robot (AUTOMATIC        | 3)                     |             |                      |                |
|                   | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob           | EyeglassRunbo          | RUNBOOK     | 20/10/2015, 16:08:47 | Fa Policy Disa |
|                   |   | EvenlassRunho          | RUNBOOK     | 21/10/2015. 13:00:00 | Error          |

5. Select a bulk action and then select the Enable/Disable option.

| <ol> <li>Job Definitions</li> </ol> |        | Job Name                             | Policy               | Type        | Last Run Dat  | e s              | State         |
|-------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
|                                     |        |                                      |                      |             |               |                  |               |
| 🕵 Running Jobs                      | E Con  | figuration Replication: Share, Expor | t, Alias replication | (AUTOMATIC) |               |                  |               |
|                                     | ⊞ 🗹    | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo        | AUTO        | 21/10/2015, 1 | 13:30:23         | ОК            |
|                                     | ± 🗆    | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob    | EyeglassRunbo        | AUTO        | 20/10/2015, 1 | 16:05:33         | Policy Dis    |
|                                     | E Con  | figuration Replication: DFS mode (A  | UTOMATIC)            |             |               |                  |               |
|                                     | ⊞ □    | Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror            | dfs9_mirror          | AUTODES     | n/a           | i                | Policy Dis    |
|                                     | ⊞ □    | Cluster-1-7201_dfs9                  | dfs9                 | AUTODFS     | 21/10/2015, 1 | 3:30:23          | ок            |
|                                     | 🖯 Fail | over: Quota Failover (RUN MANUALL    | .Y)                  |             |               |                  |               |
|                                     | Ξ.     | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo        | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 1 | 15:10:32         | ок            |
|                                     | Ħ 🗆    | Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror_quotas     | dfs9_mirror          | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 1 | 10:56:59         | Policy Dis    |
|                                     | Ħ 🗆    | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob    | EyeglassRunbo        | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 1 | 16:06:14 B       | Policy Dis    |
|                                     | ⊞ □    | Cluster-1-7201_dfs9_quotas           | dfs9                 | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 1 | 10:08:36         | OK 🗧          |
|                                     | 🖯 Fail | over Readiness (AUTOMATIC)           |                      |             |               |                  |               |
|                                     | Ξ      | Cluster2-7201_Cluster-1-7201         |                      | READINESS   | 21/10/2015    | Edit Configurati | on(s)         |
|                                     | Ξ      | Cluster-1-7201_Cluster2-7201         |                      | READINESS   | 21/10/2015    | Run Now          |               |
|                                     | 🗆 Fail | over: Runbook Robot (AUTOMATIC)      |                      |             | 1             | Enable/Disable   | Microsoft DFS |
|                                     | Ħ 🗆    | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob    | EyeglassRunbo        | RUNBOOK     | 20/10/2015    | 🔊 Set Schedule   |               |
|                                     | ⊞ □    | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo        | RUNBOOK     | 21/10/2015    | Enable/Disable   | >             |
|                                     |        |                                      |                      |             |               | Delete           | _             |

- 7. On the next Configuration Replication cycle, the enabled Job will be run.
- 1.

# Setup Eyeglass for Email Notification (Mandatory)

- 1. Configure SMTP
- 2. Configure Email Recipients

# Configure SMTP (Mandatory)

 Enter the information for your email server in the Notification Center / Configure SMTP tab.



#### 2.

| Configure SMTP    | Outgoing Email Ser      | rver Information                            |      |     |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|------|-----|
| Manage Recipients | Host Name*:             | 192.168.1.250                               |      |     |
| Twitter           | Port*:                  | 25  |      |     |
| Slack             | From*:                  | demo@superna.net                            |      |     |
| Webhooks          | Use Authentication:     |   |      |     |
|                   | User:                   |   |      |     |
|                   | Password:               |   |      |     |
|                   | Enable TLS:             | 0   |      |     |
|                   | Alarms more severe that | n the selected filter will also be emailed. |      |     |
|                   | Alarm Severity Filter*: | CRITICAL 👻                                  |      |     |
|                   | Test Recipient:         | Test Email Setting                          | Save | Clo |

- 4.
- 5. Host name: Enter the host name for your email server
- 6. Port: Enter the port which should be used for sending email

- From: Enter the email address of the sender of the email.
   Typically this is required to be a valid email address recognized by the email server.
- 8. Use Authentication: Select if email server requires an authenticated login
- 9. User: User or email address for authentication
- 10. Password: Password for authentication
- 11. Enable TLS: Select the Enable TLS check box if your email server expects TLS communication.
- 12. Alarm Severity Filter: Select level of alarms for which you would like to receive email.
- 13. Use the Test Email Setting button to check that the email server information added is correct. If an error occurs, you will get error codes from the SMTP connection. The "no error" response indicates successful connection. If an error is returned the debug response should be sent to support.superna.net.
- 14. Save your changes.
  - •

# Configure Email Recipients (Mandatory)

- Enter the information for your email server in the Notification Center / Manage Recipients tab.
- Email Recipient: Enter the email address that emails will be sent to.
- 3. Select the report type this user receipt
  - a. All

- b. Reports (RPO, cluster configuration)
- c. Easy Auditor product (All reports and email notifications)
- d. Cluster Storage Monitor product reports (quota usage)
- e. Cluster Storage Monitor product Data recovery portal emails)

|    |                  |                     |             | All                  |   |          |       |
|----|------------------|---------------------|-------------|----------------------|---|----------|-------|
|    |                  |                     |             |                      |   |          |       |
|    |                  |                     |             | Auditor Only Reports |   |          |       |
|    |                  |                     |             | Quota Management     |   |          |       |
|    |                  |                     |             | Data Recovery        |   |          |       |
| 4  | Email Recipient: | auditor@example.com | Email Type: | Reports              | - | Add/Edit | Close |
| 4. |                  |                     |             |                      |   |          |       |

5. Select the Add button.

| Notification      | enter                   |   | -        |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---|----------|
| Configure SMTP    | Outgoing Email Ser      | ver Information                             |          |
| Manage Recipients | Host Name*:             | 192.168.1.250                               |          |
| Twitter           | Port*:                  | 25  |          |
| Slack             | From*:                  | demo@superna.net                            |          |
| Webhooks          | Use Authentication:     |   |          |
|                   | User:                   |   |          |
|                   | Password:               |   |          |
|                   | Enable TLS:             |   |          |
|                   | Alarms more severe than | n the selected filter will also be emailed. |          |
|                   | Alarm Severity Filter*: | CRITICAL                                    |          |
|                   | Test Recipient:         | Test Email Setting                          | Save Cle |

- 7. For other Notification center configuration options see the admin guide topic.
- 2.

# Protecting the Eyeglass appliance (Optional)

1. See How to configure warm standby

How to Change Eyeglass Appliance Networking Configuration (yast network utility) after OVA deployment (Optional)

Note: if you need to update the configuration at any time, ssh to the appliance admin user and then sudo su - to root and use the yast2 command to open the wizard.

#### Step 1: sudo su - to root

Root user password is unique to the appliance and has no default. Use the "sudo su" command to change to root user if desired.

Step 2: Type yast2 lan at the prompt.

Now follow steps to setup IP information on the appliance.

#### Notes on Using yast2

The yast2 interface is a generic text based user interface (TUI) that predates modern mouse and windows desktop environments. The downside of TUI's are that they can be tricky to navigate if you've never used them before - the benefit of TUI's is that they are widely compatible across platforms and do not require any graphical user interface to be deployed.

#### yast2 navigation Tips

Use the (TAB)key to move from one field to the next. Use + (SHIFT TAB) key combination to move backwards

Use the (ARROW) keys to move around within a field

Use the (ALT) key, along with the bold letter in the interface to select that specific field, tab or option

- 1. The Network Devices / Network Settings window is open.
- 2. In Network Settings screen open second tab: Hostname/DNS.
- 3. Type Hostname for your Eyeglass appliance
- 4. Type DNS server IP. In this example: 192.168.1.250

IMPORTANT: If you are using hostname for the target in your SynclQ policies, the DNS information entered here must be able to resolve this host back to the Cluster IP Address in order for Eyeglass to perform configuration replication. If the hostname cannot be resolved, Eyeglass will not create the associated configuration replication Job.

| Hostname   | Domain Name                             |
|--|---|
| euer lass-AT02   | site                                    |
| [x] Change Hostname via DHCPNo in<br>[ ] Assign Hostname to Loopback ] | nterface with dhcp<br>IP                |
| Modify DNS configuration Custom Pc                                     | olicy Rule                              |
| use her and roundy +   | No. |
| Name Servers and Domain Search Li                                      | ist                                     |
| Name Servers and Domain Search Li<br>Name Server 1                     | ist<br>Domain Search—                   |
| Name Servers and Domain Search Li<br>192.168.1.250                     | Domain Search-                          |

9. In Network Settings screen open first tab: Overview. Choose Edit.



1. In Network Card Setup screen, choose 2nd tab: Address. Type the **same** Hostname you entered when deploying the Eyeglass OVF..

| Network Card Setup           | orary Direct               | ories          |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| Device Type                  | :C                         | Configuration  | Name                       |
| Ethernet                     | (Ronding Sia               | ens33          | FT us luce                 |
| () Dynamic Address DHC       | Councing Sia               | DHCP both vers | ion 4 and $6$              |
| (x) Statically assigned      | IP Address                 |                |                            |
| 11' Address<br>192 168 4 139 | Subnet Mask<br>255 255 255 | n              | Hostname<br>Fuer Lass-AT02 |
| Additional Addresses         | 8 63376337633              |                | agegrass mor               |
| Alize Name IP Addres         | oo Natmaok                 |                |                            |
|                              | ssinernask                 |                |                            |

3. Next - OK - Next

© Superna LLC

# **1.1. Eyeglass Service Account Minimum** Privileges

Home Top

- Overview
- Step 1 Creating the local PowerScale Eyeglass User -PowerScale Command Line For Eyeglass DR, Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor and Storage Cluster Monitor
  - Easy Auditor Additional Permissions Required:
- Step 1A Search & Recover and Golden Copy Product
   Service Account Local PowerScale User Account Creation:
- Step 2 SUDO Root Level Commands Needed for Eyeglass DR & Airgap , Cluster Storage Monitor Unlock My Files
  - o Steps to create sudo entries on PowerScale
    - SUDO file Updates Required for DR Edition & Airgap
    - SUDO File Updates Required for Cluster Storage
       Monitor Unlock My Files Product
    - Airgap basic or Enterprise deployments on the protected clusters
- How to Restart Eyeglass services after making permissions changes:
- How to use Eyeglass DR Edition with Compliance Mode Clusters
- How to use Eyeglass DR Edition with Clusters using STIG Hardening

- How to Create Eyeglass Service Account on Dell ECS For Ransomware Defender
- How to create the Airgap Eyeglass Service Account for the Vault Cluster
  - Eyeglass vault service account creation
  - Eyeglass service account Creation
  - Edit the sudo file to enable log gather support

## Overview

Eyeglass communicates with PowerScale clusters to perform discovery and add/update/delete of share, export and quota configuration information. The minimum PowerScale cluster node user privileges required for Eyeglass/PowerScale connectivity to successfully perform configuration replication and support other Eyeglass features are:

NOTE: Any change to Eyeglass Service Account privileges requires an Eyeglass sca service restart to recognize the change (procedure below).

NOTE: AD or LDAP user is not supported, this lowers the system availability and adds dependency on AD/LDAP servers for API calls, local users on PowerScale have no dependence on AD/LDAP, in addition this generates too many authentication requests for API calls. In addition to creation of the Eyeglass service account on the PowerScale cluster, the sudoer file on the cluster must be updated to allow the Eyeglass service account to execute OneFS CLI commands that require Elevated Permissions to run as root. Step 1 - Creating the local PowerScale Eyeglass User -PowerScale Command Line For Eyeglass DR, Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor and Storage Cluster Monitor

Use these permissions for all of the products above.

- 1. Follow create steps below
- 2. Then move to step 2 SUDO file configuration

#### To provision user and role from the PowerScale Cluster command line:

These commands below are executable by ssh as **root** on PowerScale and then right click : **Note: Service account set to password never expires.** 

isi auth roles create --name EyeglassAdmin --description "EyeglassAdmin role"

isi auth users create eyeglass --enabled yes --password 3y3gl4ss isi auth users modify eyeglass --password-expires no isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-user eyeglass isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV LOGIN PAPI

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_AUTH isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_ROLE isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_NFS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_SMB isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_NETWORK isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_QUOTA isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_QUOTA

ISI\_PRIV\_LOGIN\_SSH

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_AUDIT isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_SYNCIQ isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV NS IFS ACCESS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV EVENT** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV HDFS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV REMOTE SUPPORT** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI PRIV SNAPSHOT isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV SMARTPOOLS** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV WORM** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV STATISTICS** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_JOB\_ENGINE isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV CLOUDPOOLS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV DEVICES** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV FILE FILTER** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV HARDENING** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV NDMP** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV MONITORING isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro **ISI PRIV ANTIVIRUS** 

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_FTP isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_HTTP isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_NTP isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_SYS\_UPGRADE \* new in 2.5.8 for config backup \* isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_CONFIGURATION

Easy Auditor Additional Permissions Required:

If using Easy Auditor add this additional permission isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-privro ISI\_PRIV\_NS\_TRAVERSE

Step 1A - Search & Recover and Golden Copy Product Service Account Local PowerScale User Account Creation:

1. Follow these instructions to create a dedicated Search & Recover/Golden Copy.

isi auth roles create --name EyeglassAdminSR --description "Eyeglass Search & Recover role" isi auth users create eyeglassSR --enabled yes --password 3y3gl4ss isi auth users modify eyeglassSR --password-expires no isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-user eyeglassSR isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-user eyeglassSR ISI\_PRIV\_LOGIN\_PAPI isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-privro ISI PRIV AUTH isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-privro ISI PRIV SMB isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv **ISI PRIV SNAPSHOT** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro **ISI\_PRIV\_DEVICES** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-privro ISI PRIV NS TRAVERSE isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV NS IFS ACCESS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv **ISI PRIV JOB ENGINE** isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV NETWORK (New As of May 2019) \*\*\*\*\*\* Only required ACL security mode and file recovery portal isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro ISI PRIV IFS BACKUP isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro

ISI\_PRIV\_IFS\_RESTORE

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* new as of 1.1.5 File pool reporting \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_CLOUDPOOLS isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminSR --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_SMARTPOOLS 

# Step 2 - SUDO Root Level Commands Needed for Eyeglass DR & Airgap , Cluster Storage Monitor Unlock My Files

In order to execute the some commands from the CLI that are not available in the PAPI for OneFS and require root-level (sudo) privileges for execution, this allows service accounts to run the command without having root access.

Apply the settings that apply to the applications you have purchased, apply to all clusters managed by Eyeglass products.

# Steps to create sudo entries on PowerScale

- 1. Edit the sudoer file using the PowerScale isi\_visudo command.
- 2. Sudo file opens in vi editor.

- NOTE: Add lines for the applications you need to enable, each product has different sudo requirements, review each section that applies below.
- 4. Save your changes. (: then type wq!)
- 5. Repeat step for each cluster managed by Eyeglass.

SUDO file Updates Required for DR Edition & Airgap

Add the following lines DR product:

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_classic auth ads\*

# (new for 2.5.6 DR validation)

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_classic domain info\*

yellow highlighted entries should be deleted for 2.5.6 or later releases

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_classic networks\* (only required if cluster is 7.x.x.x)

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array isi status\*

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi status\*

eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array date +%s

SUDO File Updates Required for Cluster Storage Monitor Unlock My Files Product

#### Add the following lines:

#(new Nov 12, 2019 for 2.5.5 latest release Cluster Storage Monitor UnLock My files eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array -s isi\_run -z ?\* isi\_classic smb file\* eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array isi\_run -z ?\* isi\_classic smb file\*

Airgap basic or Enterprise deployments on the protected clusters

# used for vault cluster alarm collection
eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array -n ? curl \*
eyeglass ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_for\_array -n ?? curl \*

# How to Restart Eyeglass services after making

# permissions changes:

- 1. SSH to Eyeglass appliance
- Type: sudo su (to elevate to root user enter the admin user password)
- 3. Type: systemctl restart sca
- 4. Type: systemctl status sca (to verify sca service active and running after the restart)

# How to use Eyeglass DR Edition with Compliance Mode Clusters

For clusters using compliance mode sudoer and root access is not permitted.

This means that clusters must be added to Eyeglass using the user below:

Compadmin

# How to use Eyeglass DR Edition with Clusters using

# STIG Hardening

- 1. You can enable STIG OS hardening on the cluster using:
- 2. isi hardening apply --profile=STIG --report=true
- 3. done

How to Create Eyeglass Service Account on Dell ECS

For Ransomware Defender

- 1. Login to the ECS as admin, expand the management menu, click users, select Management users tab, Click New User.
- 2. Complete the form as per below example. User name eyeglass with administrator role assigned and set a password.

|   | D               | KALEMC   EC         | S      |                                     |                    |
|---|-----------------|---------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
|   | ~               | Dashboard           |        | New Management User                 |                    |
|   | <u>11</u><br>11 | Monitor             | >      | Local User     O AD/LDAP User or AD | ) Group            |
|   |                 | Manage              | $\sim$ | Name *                              |                    |
|   |                 | Storage Pools       |        | eyeglass                            |                    |
|   |                 | Virtual Data Center |        | Password *                          | Confirm Password * |
|   |                 | Replication Group   |        |                                     |                    |
|   |                 | Authentication      |        | System Administrator ① No Yes       |                    |
|   |                 | Namespace           |        | System Monitor 🛈                    |                    |
|   |                 | Users               |        | No Yes                              |                    |
|   |                 | Buckets             |        |                                     |                    |
|   |                 | File                |        | SAVE Cancel                         |                    |
| 3 | ŝ               | Settings            | >      |                                     |                    |

| D                          | KLLEMC ECS                  | \$           |                               |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>-</b>                   | Dashboard                   |              | User Management 🛛             |                             |
| $\frac{\alpha \theta}{10}$ | Monitor                     | >            | Object Users Management Users |                             |
|                            | Manage                      | $\checkmark$ | NEW MANAGEMENT USER           |                             |
|                            | Virtual Data Center         | Name 🔺       | Role                          |                             |
|                            |                             | admin1       | System Admin                  |                             |
|                            | Replication Group           | cation Group | emcsecurity                   | -                           |
|                            | Authentication<br>Namespace | eyeglass     | System Admin                  |                             |
|                            |                             | monitor1     | System Monitor                |                             |
|                            | Users                       |              | root                          | System Admin,System Monitor |
|                            | Buckets                     |              |                               |                             |
|                            | File                        |              |                               |                             |
| \$                         | Settings                    | >            |                               |                             |

# How to create the Airgap Eyeglass Service Account for the Vault Cluster

Follow this steps on the vault cluster during vault cluster hardening. Replace the yellow with a strong password, that should only be known by the security officer or security personnel.

NOTE: The protected production cluster requires additional sudo permissions for vault alarm collection. See the eyeglass service account update section for the eyeglass

Eyeglass vault service account creation

isi auth roles create --name EyeglassAdminvault --description "EyeglassAdmin role Vault" isi auth users create eyeglassvault --enabled yes --password <set a strong password here>

isi auth users modify eyeglassvault --password-expires no isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_LOGIN\_PAPI

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_DEVICES

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_NS\_IFS\_ACCESS

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_JOB\_ENGINE

isi auth roles modify **EyeglassAdminvault** --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_NETWORK

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_LOGIN\_SSH

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv ISI\_PRIV\_SYNCIQ

isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdminvault --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_EVENT

Eyeglass service account Creation

isi auth roles create --name EyeglassAdmin --description "EyeglassAdmin remote role" isi auth users create eyeglass --enabled yes --password <set a strong password here> isi auth users modify eyeglass --password-expires no isi auth roles modify EyeglassAdmin --add-priv-ro ISI\_PRIV\_EVENT

Edit the sudo file to enable log gather support

- 1. Edit the sudoer file using the PowerScale isi\_visudo command.
- 2. Sudo file opens in vi editor
- 3. eyeglassvault ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/bin/isi\_gather\_info
- 4. Save your changes. (: then type wq!)
- 5. Repeat step for each cluster managed by Eyeglass.

© Superna LLC
# **1.2. Eyeglass Warm Standby Direct Sync Guide**

Home Top

- Overview
- Definitions:
- Operating Considerations
- Deploy 2nd Appliance & Prep for Sync
- Configure Keyless SSH on Active Appliance
- Configure Scheduled Cron Sync from Active to Warm Standby
- How to Restore the Warm Standby Appliance to become Active Procedures (Requires 2.5.6 release or later)
- How to Complete Appliance Switch Test Procedures

### Overview

This procedure is to protect the production Eyeglass appliance using a 2nd Eyeglass appliance. This solution offers sync of Eyeglass backup file to the 2nd appliance that can take over operations under the following conditions:

- 1. **Controlled failover -** switching the active appliance from one data center to the other
- 2. **Uncontrolled failover protection** the 2nd appliance can be used for failover operations since it has a current near real time synced status and copy of all policies and configuration data (shares, exports and quotas) needed to complete a failover to the surviving cluster.
  - a. NOTE: If you declare an uncontrolled failover is required. You must ensure the active appliance is at the site where the data will be become active. The Warm standby appliance procedure should be used if the active appliance is at the site that had the disaster.

# The appliance should be co-located with the data that will be writeable.

#### Definitions:

- 1. **Active Appliance** Responsible for syncing configuration data and is the primary appliance for all failover operations
- 2. Active Sync Appliance 2nd appliance that has a backup synced from the active appliance

# **Operating Considerations**

- If you execute a planned controlled failover you should generate a backup from the active appliance after the backup completes. This backup reflects the current DR state after failover. The daily backup and sync process will generate a backup but you require a current view of the clusters DR status. Always generate a backup after a planned failover.
- 2. Best Practise:
  - a. Enable phone home and request support to enable daily appliance backup to create an off site backup of your appliance. This backup is retained for 14 days before it is automatically deleted. This provides an off site backup of your DR state.
  - b. After a planned failover push an off site backup using direct to support option.
    - i. Select the Support backup you generated with the check box, select the "Upload selected file directly

Superna support". This will push an off site backup that can be requested back if needed.

- c. OR If phone home is disabled and firewall or proxy does not allow the direct upload to support option, then download a newly created support backup from the Active appliance (after the failover), then upload to the support page following steps here. This backup is retained for 14 days before it is automatically deleted.
- d. In addition to the above options, download the support backup file and store a copy at the opposite site from where the active appliance is located. Document this location internally to use with the recover options below if it is determined this backup is the most recent backup.
- e. NOTE: The daily sync backup enabled by direct sync is 24 hours old and is typically the backup required in most cases.

# Deploy 2nd Appliance & Prep for Sync

1. Follow the install guide to deploy a 2nd appliance. Guide link.

## Configure Keyless SSH on Active Appliance

- 1. Login via ssh as the admin user
- 2. type: ssh-keygen (hit enter to all prompts)
- ssh-copy-id -i /home/admin/.ssh/id\_rsa.pub admin@x.x.x.x
   (where x.x.x.x is the ip address of the 2nd warm appliance, enter

yes to accept the ssh finger print, enter the remote warm standby appliance admin user password)

- 4. Test keyless ssh was successful
  - a. ssh admin@x.x.x.x (where x.x.x.x is the ip address of the remote warm standby appliance)
  - b. if no password prompt then everything worked
- 5. done

# Configure Scheduled Cron Sync from Active to Warm Standby

- 1. Login to the Warm StandbyAppliance as admin user over ssh and set the permissions
  - a. sudo mkdir -p /opt/superna/var/backup/
  - b. sudo setfacl -m u:admin:rwx /opt/superna/var/backup/
- 2. Login to the Active Appliance to Test copy backup files
  - a. Login as the admin user
  - b. scp /opt/superna/var/backup/\* admin@x.x.x.x:/opt/superna/var/backup/ (x.x.x.x is the ip of the warm standby appliance)
  - c. if successful continue, if not debug the steps above.
- 3. Create the script on the Active Appliance
  - a. Login as the admin user over ssh
  - b. nano /home/admin/warmstandby.sh

- c. paste the string below into the file and replace x.x.x.x with ip of the **warm standby appliance**:
  - i. scp /opt/superna/var/backup/\*
     admin@x.x.x.x:/opt/superna/var/backup/
- d. Press control+x answer yes to save the file
- e. chmod 777 /home/admin/warmstandby.sh
- 4. Schedule the script to run daily at noon with cron on the Active Appliance
  - a. Login to the Active Appliance over ssh as the admin user
  - b. sudo -s (enter admin password)
  - c. cd /etc/cron.d
  - d. type this command:
    - i. echo "0 8 \* \* \* admin /usr/bin/timeout 6h/home/admin/warmstandby.sh" > iglsstandby
  - e. Restart the cron service to pickup the new script
    - i. systemctl restart cron
- 5. Verify backup copy script is running
  - a. Wait until the next scheduled copy
  - b. Login to the **warm standby appliance** as admin user and list the folder to verify files have the correct daily date stamp
  - c. Is -Is /opt/superna/var/backup/

How to Restore the Warm Standby Appliance to become Active Procedures (Requires 2.5.6 release or later)

- You can restore a backup to your second Warm Standby Eyeglass appliance to make the standby the active appliance. SSH as the admin user into the warm standby appliance and execute the following steps:
  - a. ssh to as admin user on the Warm Standby Eyeglass appliance
  - b. Run the restore command
    - NOTE that command must include full path to backup zip file or use path only and restore command will detect the most recent backup it discovers on the path based on the time stamp on the backup zip files.
    - ii. Option #1 Auto detect the most recent file
      - 1. igls app restore /opt/superna/var/backup/
        - a. This option will auto detect the most recent backup files and displays it for confirmation to use the suggested file, accept the file selection. You will be prompted to enter the admin password again to become the root user after entering the command.

iii. Option #2 Use a specific file

- 1. igls app restore /opt/superna/var/backup/<a href="mailto:superna/var/backup/superna
  - a. NOTE: you will be prompted to enter the admin password again to become the root user after entering the command.
- c. You will be prompted with a confirmation of yes/no.
  - i. For Testing Only Answer No to exit the process.
    - 1. This step should be used to test the restore procedure without actually running the restore.
    - This will not restore the database and will not make the standby appliance the active appliannce.
- d. For Production Active appliance switch to the Warm
   Standby Answer answer Yes
  - Continue and monitor the command execution until it completes before trying to login to the GUI, it may take 15-20 seconds before you can login to the web UI.
  - ii. IMPORTANT: Original Eyeglass appliance should be powered off if switching to the Warm Standby Appliance. NEVER have two appliances operating against the same clusters. This can cause a conflict and is not supported. Verify your backup appliance is up and running after a restoration. Open a Browser to ip address of warm standby appliance.

e. Once the restore process completes, you can login to the GUI to start a failover job following the documentation for executing a failover. see Guide here.

## How to Complete Appliance Switch Test Procedures

- 1. Install 2 appliances as per above steps in this guide
- 2. Shutdown the active appliance VM (power off)
- 3. Follow instructions to switch to the Warm standby Appliance
- 4. Verify the login to the GUI and open the jobs icon , and running jobs tab to verify normal configuration sync jobs are running, view the DR Dashboard after waiting at least 15 minutes to get a current view of DR Readiness.
- 5. Test completed
- 6. How to revert to the Active Appliance follow these steps:
  - a. Login warm standby appliance
  - b. Factory reset the warm standby appliance
    - i. Login via ssh as admin user
    - ii. run this command
      - 1. ./opt/superna/sbin/reset.sh
      - This command will delete the database and remove all clusters added to the appliance and return to a default state.
  - c. Power on the Active Appliance VM again

- d. Login and verify jobs, and DR dashboard
- e. Done

© Superna LLC

# **1.3. Legacy - Eyeglass Warm Standby with SynclQ Guide**

Home Top

# Legacy Guide

# Eyeglass Warm Standby Configuration and Restore Execution Procedures

- What's New
- Abstract:
- Notes on this solution:
- Procedure Overview below:
- Requirements
  - Configuration
  - How to Restore the Warm Standby Appliance to become Active Procedures (Requires 2.5.6 release or later)

What's New

 Release 2.5.6 offers an auto detection of most recent backup to use which speeds up the restore process and decreases RTO by eliminating maual steps to select or list files to use for restore. This can remove minutes of time to recovery the 2nd appliance. The procedures to restore the 2nd appliance with auto detect mode should be possible to complete in less < 1 minute with single CLI command needed

#### Abstract:

This procedure is to protect the production Eyeglass appliance using the automated 7 day backup feature in Eyeglass and using SynclQ to sync the backup archives to a 2nd cluster where the Warm standby Eyeglass appliance is running.

#### Notes on this solution:

- This process also means only **One** Eyeglass appliance has clusters added.
- This only requires one set of license keys (license keys are appliance specific)
- Requires SynclQ enabled clusters to protect the archives
- Production Eyeglass sync's Export used for DR of Eyeglass configuration data



Procedure Overview below:

If you already have an second Eyeglass backup appliance, you may skip to Configuration Steps, otherwise start by installing a second OVF Appliance using the installagion guide.

You will need a second Eyeglass appliance set up. However, it will not manage any clusters and will be "empty". This appliance is present for the sole purpose of restoring an Eyeglass backup archive to it, just in case a problem should arise in your original Eyeglass appliance. Deploy the Eyeglass OVF and set up the network settings as usual. Confirm the installation went well by logging into your appliance and if all went well, stop there. **Do not** add any clusters, **licenses**, etc. to the appliance. **Everything** will be restored after restoring a backup archive.

## Requirements

- 1. Standby appliance deployed at 2nd site
- 2. Standby appliance running the same release as the production appliance
- 3. All firewall ports opened to the clusters that need to be managed
- 4. DNS, NTP configuration is identical to the production appliance

Configuration

- 1. On your Source cluster, create an NFS export and change the following settings:
  - a. Example path /ifs/eyeglasswarmstandby
  - b. Under "clients" and "root clients", type your 2 Eyeglass IPs, separated by a comma.
  - c. Under "Permissions", check "Mount access to subdirectories".
  - d. save the export
  - e. Set permissions in the file system
    - i. ssh to the PowerScale as root user
    - ii. set permissions
      - 1. chmod 777 /ifs/eyeglasswarmstandby
  - f. done
- 2. Create a SynclQ policy pointing to the NFS export path while inputting the target cluster ip address or Smartconnect FQDN used for replication and desired target directory on the remote cluster example /ifs/eyeglasswarmstandby
  - a. Run the synclQ policy manually to create the remote directory.
  - b. Set the schedule on the policy to 1 time per day
  - c. Wait 5 minutes or start Eyeglass Configuration sync job to sync the export to the DR cluster.

- d. Ensure the export was synced by checking in your Eyeglass appliance the Configuration Replication Jobs is successfully completed and verifying that the export was created on the target cluster using Onefs GUI.
- e. NOTE: Change the policy setting to "when the source is modified" if you plan to change the scheduled backup process to run more often than once per day. The instructions to increase the interval to run the backup process is documented below.
- f. done
- You will now need to perform the following mount command on the production eyeglass appliance.
  - a. SSH into your Eyeglass appliance and switch to root user with sudo -s (enter admin password)
  - b. Run this command and enter the admin password when prompted
    - i. sudo chown sca:users /opt/superna/var/backup
    - ii. sudo chmod 777 /opt/superna/var/backup
  - c. Execute the following: vim /etc/fstab
  - d. Add the command line below and replace it as indicated:
  - e. <Source-cluster-IP>:/ifs/eyeglasswarmstandby /opt/superna/var/backup nfs rw 0.0
  - f. Then execute the command:
  - g. mount -a
  - h. verify no errors are returned from this command

- Type "mount" to verify the mount was successful. You should see the NFS export listed in the output of the mount command.
- 4. Backups are created automatically by Eyeglass on a daily basis at 2:00 am. If you would like to test out that this procedure is working and backups are being written to the cluster, you may manually run the script via SSH anytime you'd like, rather than waiting 24 hours. To run the script, do the following:
  - a. SSH into your Eyeglass appliance and gain root access. (login as admin and type sudo -s to switch to root)
  - b. Change directory to: /opt/superna/bin
  - c. Execute the following: ./backup\_last\_seven\_days.sh (this will create a backup)
    - i. NOTE: this schedule can be changed to a more refrequent schedule following these steps
    - ii. NOTE: backup runs by default on daily schedule
    - iii. How to Change the schedule
      - 1. ssh to eyeglass as admin
      - 2. enter sudo -s (enter password for admin)
      - 3. nano /etc/cron.d/sca-backup
      - change the cron string to a new value (Use this set to help with the cron string (https://crontab.guru/)
      - 5. save the file with ctrl key + x answer yes to save the file

- d. Verify that backup file has been created on the cluster mount path.
- 5. Now, you will need to SSH into your warm standby Eyeglass appliance and execute the following command to mount the NFS:
  - a. SSH into your Eyeglass appliance and with **sudo -s** (enter admin password)
  - b. Run these commands
    - i. sudo chown sca:users /opt/superna/var/backup
    - ii. sudo chmod 777 /opt/superna/var/backup
  - c. Execute the following: nano /etc/fstab
    - i. Add the command line below and replace it as indicated:
    - ii. <Target-cluster-IP>: /ifs/eyeglasswarmstandby/opt/superna/var/backup nfs rw 0 0
    - iii. mount -a
    - iv. Run the SynclQ Policy on your Source Cluster to copy the backup files to the DR cluster.
      - Ensure backup files are present from the Warm Standby appliance by listing the path
- 6. Verify Warm Standy Appliance has visibility to replicated backup files are visible and have a current date stamp.
  - a. sudo -s (enter admin password)
  - b. cd /opt/superna/var/backup
  - c. Type Is (to list contents of the mount point from step above)

 d. Verify backup archive(s) exist from the source cluster, synced by SynclQ to target cluster and mounted visible to the "Warm standby Eyeglass appliance"

How to Restore the Warm Standby Appliance to become Active Procedures (Requires 2.5.6 release or later)

- 1. You can restore a backup to your second Warm Standy Eyeglass appliance from the mounted path. SSH into the backup appliance and execute the following:
  - a. ssh to as admin user on the Warm Standby Eyeglass appliance
  - b. Run the restore command NOTE that command must include full path to backup zip file or use path only and restore command will detect the most recent backup it discovers on the path.
    - i. Option #1 Auto detect the most recent file
      - igls app restore /opt/superna/var/backup (this option auto detect the most recent backup files and displays it for confirmation to use the suggested file, accept the file selection. You will be prompted to enter the admin password again to become root after entering the command)
    - ii. Option #2 Use a specific file
      - 1. igls app restore

/opt/superna/var/backup/<a>

NOTE: you will be prompted to enter the admin password again to become root after entering the command)

- c. You will be given a confirmation (yes/no).
  - i. For Testing answer No to exit the process. This step should be used to test the restore procedure without actually running the restore.
- d. For Production appliance recovery answer Yes to continue and monitor the command execution until it completes before trying to login to the GUI, it may take 15-20 seconds before you can login.
  - i. IMPORTANT: Original Eyeglass appliance should be off or gone if restoring. NEVER have two appliances operating against the clusters under management.
    This can cause a conflict and is not supported. Verify your backup appliance is up and running after a restoration, by https to ip address of warm standby appliance.
- e. Once the restore process completes, you can login to the GUI to start a failover job following the documentation for exeucting a failover.

How to Restore the Warm Standby Appliance to become Active Procedures (< 2.5.6 releases) You can restore a backup to your second Warm Standy Eyeglass appliance from the mounted path. SSH into the backup appliance and execute the following:

- 1. ssh to as admin user on the Warm Standby Eyeglass appliance
- 2. Run the restore command note that command must include full path to backup zip file.
  - a. use this command to get list of all available backup files ls
     /opt/superna/var/backup
  - b. igls app restore

/opt/superna/var/backup/<name\_of\_backup.zip> (NOTE: you will be prompted to enter the admin password again to become root after entering the command)

- 3. You will be given a confirmation (yes/no).
  - a. For Testing answer No to exit the process. This step should be used to test the restore procedure without actually running the restore.
- For Production appliance recovery answer Yes to continue and monitor the command execution until it completes before trying to login to the GUI, it may take 15-20 seconds before you can login.
  - a. IMPORTANT: Original Eyeglass appliance should be off or gone if restoring. NEVER have two appliances operating against the clusters under management. This can cause a conflict and is not supported. Verify your backup appliance is up and running after a restoration, by https to ip address of warm standby appliance.

5. Once the restore process completes, you can login to the GUI to start a failover job following the documentation for exeucting a failover.

© Superna LLC

# 2. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Upgrade Guide

Home Top

- Read Me First
  - Before Executing Upgrade Steps
- In-place Upgrades
  - Scenario #1 Appliances running Older Open Suse OS to the latest release
  - Scenario #2 Appliances running Open Suse 15.1 or 15.2 OS to the latest release
  - In-place Upgrade Installer Download and Upgrade Procedures
- Upgrade to A New Appliance from an Old Appliance
  - Step 1 Upgrade Path From Old Appliance Versions to Open Suse 15.x OS with the latest Release - Backup/Restore Method
    - Step 1a Review Table of Migrated Settings
    - Step 1b Review Historical Eyeglass Data & Settings that are Not Restored before continuing
    - Step 2 Information to Record before Upgrading
    - Step 2a Automated Appliance Configuration Import
    - Step 3 Restore Zip File (old appliance) and Restore to New Appliance Procedures
- Post-Upgrade Steps (All Upgrade Paths)

- Validate Service account permissions, Eyeglass Job Status, Pool Mappings, Licenses and Cluster Inventory
- Validate Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor License Assignment
- Validate Ransomware Defender and Easy Auditor settings

## Read Me First

New Validations. Expect to get warnings post upgrade. This is expected and is a key feature of this release to detect failover conditions that must be addressed to be ready for failover. If you get alarms it is good, so the issues can be fixed.

- SynclQ Domain Mark for fast fail back checks both clusters to verify if SynclQ domain mark exists and will raise warning if not found (NOTE: it will raise warning if you did not apply sudo update on step #1)
- 2. **SPN Delegation for Access zone and IP pool failover** This check AD Delegation was completed to the cluster AD objects and the opposite cluster (cross test). If any test fails it will raise a warning with exactly which delegation permission is missing.
- 3. DNS Dual Delegation This ensures automatic DNS resolution is in place before a failover. This validation will inspect your DNS configuration to determine if the Delegation is correct, A records resolve to subnet service ip's in the correct subnet. If you use Infoblox this validation must be disabled. It only supports standards based Name server delegations and not DNS forwarding.

### Before Executing Upgrade Steps

- 1. The upgrade will disrupt Eyeglass services for less than 10 minutes
- A VM level snapshot should be taken before upgrade to allow rollback to the previous version of the appliance

# In-place Upgrades

Scenario #1 - Appliances running Older Open Suse OS to the latest release

This option allows customers to upgrade to the latest release without deploying a new OVF to get the latest operating system. **NOTE: OS** version 42.3, 15.1 no longer receives security updates and is customers choice to stay on this OS of the appliance. NOTE: The OS is not covered by the support contract.

- 1. To check the OS version
- 2. ssh as admin user to Eyeglass
- 3. type cat /etc/os-release
- 4. The OS version is displayed

Scenario #2 - Appliances running Open Suse 15.1 or 15.2 OS

to the latest release

- 1. No special steps
- 2. Continue to upgrade instructions here.

# In-place Upgrade - Installer Download and Upgrade Procedures

- 1. To complete an offline upgrade:
- 2. Login to support site with a registered support account https://support.superna.net
- 3. Scroll down on page after login to locate the software download validation form.

| Eyeglass Appliance ID*: |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
|                         | Download |

#### 4.

5. Get the appliance ID from the about window of the Eyeglass desktop

| 🚳 About / Contact  |   |                                    | _ 2* ×                            |
|--------------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Contact Us         | superna eyeglass is the industry leading platform and plugin environment for managing, configuring a<br>not much that it can't be configured to do. | nd interacting with high performar | ice datacenter equipment. There's |
| Backup             | If you have any feature requests, bug reports, or comments, please contact us via:<br>support.superna.net   |                                    |                                   |
| EULA               | Package Information   |                                    |                                   |
| Phone Home Support | Package   | Version                            | Release                           |
|                    | eyeglass_ui   | 1.9.3                              | 17152                             |
|                    | eyeglass_rest   | 1.9.3                              | 17152                             |
|                    | eyeglass_sca  | 1.9.3                              | 17152                             |
|                    |   |                                    |                                   |
|                    |   |                                    |                                   |
| <                  | Appliance ID: 2a7b88c1-516.0v16080U16.0v16080-R16.0v16080C16.0v16080D16.0v16080-  |                                    |                                   |

- Enter the appliance ID and click download button to retrieve the offline installer. NOTE: This command checks for an active support contract, and will only download software if support contract validation is successful.
- 8. Use winscp tool (google winscp download) to copy the offline package onto the appliance with the admin user and password.

- 9. ssh to the Eyeglass appliance and sudo to root command: sudo su (you will be prompted for the admin password again)
- 10. Make the offline package executable: chmod 755 <filename>
- 11. Run the installer: ./<filename>
- 12. You may be prompted for Phone Home Agreement if not previously set. Enter 'y' or 'n' to continue. Phone Home allows remote monitoring and faster support that allows remote log collection.
- 13. Once the update is completed, login to the Eyeglass web page.
- 14. **IMPORTANT**: Refresh any open Eyeglass window to ensure that you have latest changes.
- 15. Check the About Eyeglass window and verify version shows the version you downloaded. The full list of releases can be found **here**.
- 16. Complete
- 17. Check Post upgrade steps here

# Upgrade to A New Appliance from an Old Appliance

1. Follow the steps in the next sections to complete the backup and restore process from an old appliance to a new appliance

Step 1 - Upgrade Path From Old Appliance Versions to Open Suse 15.x OS with the latest Release -Backup/Restore Method All Appliance versions prior to latest version are using Open Suse OS versions that no longer have security patches available (13.1, 13.2, 42.1, 42.3, 15.1). Use this upgrade option to get upgraded to the latest Eyeglass release and get the latest Open Suse 15.x OS that includes automatic security patch updates. NOTE: If you are using an older version appliance backup file some settings are not retained depending on the backup file release version. The table in this document outlines settings that are migrated.

- 1. Follow steps to download the new OVF here
- 2. Deploy new Eyeglass VM using the install guide as a reference.
- 3. NOTE: The new appliance ip address can be different than the old appliance IP.
- 4. Reference the table of settings that are migrated in the next section.
- 5. After the new appliance is deployed and you can login to the webUI and ssh then continue with the steps below.

Step 1a - Review Table of Migrated Settings

| Eyeglass Configuration Item              | Source Appliance<br>software version ><br>1.8.0 |
|--|---|
| Restoring local credentials for clusters | Yes   |
| Restoring licenses keys                  | Yes   |
| Adjusting licenses keys to latest format | Yes   |

| Job Schedules  | Yes               |
|--|-------------------|
| Job Initial state Setting (enabled, disabled)          | No                |
| custom settings with igls adv command.                 | Yes               |
| Restore Notification Center settings1                  | Yes               |
| Post restore Edit Notification Settings and set the    |                   |
| Restoring failover log history (if available)          | Yes               |
| Restoring custom RBAC roles (if available)             | Yes               |
| Restoring API tokens (if available)                    | Yes (as of 1.9.0) |
| Restoring Ransomware Defender security guard           | Yes               |
| logs (if available)                                    |                   |
| Restoring cluster Configuration reports (if available) | Yes               |
| Restoring Current Job state (enabled, disabled,        | Yes               |
| DFS mode) (if available)                               |                   |
| Alarm history  | No                |
| Old Backups Archives                                   | No                |
| Cluster Storage Monitor Data (if available)            | No                |
| RPO Generated Reports                                  | No                |
| RPO Report Data  | No                |
| Failover Scripts                                       | Yes               |

| Ransomware Defender Settings and History (if                     | No |
|--|----|
| available)   |    |
| Ransomware Defender History                                      |    |
| <ul> <li>Ransomware Defender ignored list settings</li> </ul>    |    |
| Ransomware Defender Statistics                                   |    |
| Ransomware Defender Settings                                     |    |
| <ul> <li>Security Guard configuration2</li> </ul>                |    |
| <sup>2.</sup> schedule is restored but no other settings - these |    |
| need to be re-added manually with user service                   |    |
| account and password.  |    |
|  |    |

# Step 1b - Review Historical Eyeglass Data & Settings that are Not Restored before continuing

- 1. All existing Eyeglass databases are removed, no backup is made.
- NOTE: This will delete databases and they will be rediscovered on startup. DO NOT USE this method if you have Cluster Storage Monitor or Ransomware Defender historical events or RPO Report data that you need to retain. Contact support if this applies to you scenario.

#### Step 2 - Information to Record before Upgrading

- Take a screenshot of the Eyeglass Jobs window prior to upgrade. This can be used as a reference to verify Job state and type.
   Example auto type or dfs type.
- 2. (if IP pool mode configured) Take a screenshot of the IP Pool failover policy to pool mappings

- (if Ransomware Defender) Take a screenshot of Ransomware Defender
  - a. Flag as False Positive (2.5.6 and lower) / Learned Thresholds
     (2.5.7 and higher)
  - b. Ignored List
  - c. Threshold window all settings
  - d. Allowed Files (2.5.6 and lower) / File Filters (2.5.7 and higher)
  - e. Monitor Only Settings (2.5.7 and higher)
- 4. (if Easy Auditor) Take a screenshot of Easy Auditor
  - a. Active Auditor Triggers configured

Step 2a - Automated Appliance Configuration Import

- 1. Requirements:
  - a. Must be running 2.5.7.1 or later new OVA appliance. Check
     About Icon for the version. NOTE: Do not use this command if not running the correct version and use Step 3 below if running a version < 2.5.7.1</li>
  - b. SSH access from new appliance to the old appliance
  - c. New appliance is deployed on a new ip address
  - d. 2.5.7.1
    - i. ECA must be updated to point at the new eyeglass IP address
  - e. 2.5.8

- This release will automatically update the ECA configuration and update the Eyeglass IP address and API token and push the change to all ECA nodes
- f. NOTE: This option will not migrate custom threat file settings on ECA. This is not a common modification to ECA deployments and does not apply to most deployments.
- g. NOTE: This command can take 10 minutes to run.
- 2. On the new appliance login as admin
  - a. run import command: igls app pull-config --ip=<ip> -user=<user>
  - b. IP = address of the old eyeglass appliance
  - c. --user = admin
  - d. You will be prompted for the password
- 3. The command will automate
  - a. create a backup
  - b. copy the backup to the new appliance
  - c. apply the backup to the new appliance.
  - d. Update the ECA configuration to use the new eyeglass IP address
    - NOTE: after this command completes you will need to restart the ECA cluster to update the firewall configuration.
      - login to ECA node 1 and run ecactl cluster down, followed by ecactl cluster up
  - e. Shutdown the OS on the source appliance

- f. done.
- 1. Once the steps complete Skip to Check Post upgrade steps here

Step 3 - Restore Zip File (old appliance) and Restore to New Appliance Procedures

- 1. Take an Eyeglass **Restore backup** from your old Eyeglass appliance.
- Download the **Restore backup** locally and then copy the zip file backup using scp or winscp to the newly deployed Eyeglass Appliance. It should be placed in /tmp folder .
- 3. See Restore Backup button that is required versus support backup. The Restore backup includes SSL private keys, the support backup does not. This applies to Releases > 2.5.3

| / | £ |  |
|---|---|--|
| 4 | ŀ |  |

| 💐 About / Contact  |          |   |                |                             |                   | _ 2 ×           |
|--------------------|----------|---|----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Contact Us         | Bac      | kup Archives                                      |                |                             |                   |                 |
| Backup             |          | Package   |                | Created ↓                   | Size              | Download        |
| EULA               |          | eyeglass_backup_18-06-02_14-07-23.zip             |                | 2018-06-02 14:21:19         | 258 MB            | <u>download</u> |
| Phone Home Support |          | eyeglass_backup_logs_18-06-01_21-26-00.zip        |                | 2018-06-01 21:27:26         | 140 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_18-03-22_14-20-07.zip             |                | 2018-03-22 14:28:38         | 225 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_18-02-18_11-43-41.zip             |                | 2018-02-18 11:47:42         | 151 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_18-02-16_11-49-53.zip             |                | 2018-02-16 11:53:21         | 148 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_18-02-16_09-22-18.zip             |                | 2018-02-16 09:25:52         | 189 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_17-12-27_10-11-35.zip             |                | 2017-12-27 10:14:20         | 101 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | eyeglass_backup_17-10-01_08-36-37.zip             |                | 2017-10-01 08:39:49         | 108 MB            | <u>download</u> |
|                    |          | ovordace backup 17.00.22.00.17.11 zin             |                | 2017 00 22 00-50-02         | OR MR             | beolowob        |
|                    | <b>S</b> | nclude Screenshots 🗹 Generate new Cluster Reports | Support Backup | Restore Backup Upload Selec | ted Files to Supe | rna Support     |

- 5. **Power off the old Eyeglass appliance.** It is not supported to have multiple Eyeglass appliances managing the same clusters.
- SSH to new Eyeglass appliance and login as admin (default password 3y3gl4ss). Issue "sudo su -" to enter in root mode (default password 3y3gl4ss).
- 7. From the command line execute the command

- a. igls app restore /tmp/<eyeglass\_backup.xxxx.zip> -anyrelease
- b. Replacing /tmp/<eyeglass\_backup.xxxx.zip> with the name of the Eyeglass Archive file always including full path.
- c. You will be prompted to continue. Enter "y" to continue.
- d. For example:
  - i. igls app restore /tmp/eyeglass\_backup\_17-07-05\_20-42-08.zip --anyrelease
  - ii. Do you want to revert to the archive at /tmp/eyeglass\_backup\_17-07-05\_20-42-08.zip? [y/N]:y
- e. Once the restore is complete continue below
- f. For 2.5.6 to 2.5.7 anyrelease restore where Ransomware Defender or Easy Auditor products are used then these additional steps are required to restore custom Ransomware Defender/Easy Auditor Settings:
  - If you have this file present on your ECA node 1, /opt/superna/eca/conf/common/overrides/ThreatLevels.js on, copy it to the new Eyeglass appliance into the /opt/superna/sca/data directory and apply same owner and permission as other files in the folder.
    - 1. sudo to root
    - copy the ThreatLevel.json file into the /opt/superna/sca/data directory
    - 3. chmod 644 /opt/superna/sca/data/ThreatLevels.json

4. chown

sca:users /opt/superna/sca/data/ThreatLevels.json

- ii. On the new Eyeglass appliance if this file /opt/superna/sca/data/rwdefender/RSWSettings.json exists delete it
  - 1. rm /opt/superna/sca/data/rwdefender/RSWSettings.j son
- iii. Then download the matching 2.5.7 run file for Eyeglass upgrade and copy it to the 2.5.7 appliance and then run it to restore custom Ransomware Defender settings - see instructions here for In Place Upgrade - Installer Download and Upgrade Procedures.
- 8. Check Post upgrade steps here

a.

# Post-Upgrade Steps (All Upgrade Paths)

Validate - Service account permissions, Eyeglass Job Status, Pool Mappings, Licenses and Cluster Inventory

- Mandatory Step Check minimum permissions sudo section in this document are all in place for your release. This will generate errors if permissions are not correct. Use this guide to review sudo permissions.
- 2. Login to the new Eyeglass appliance and check:
  - a. Open Jobs window and verify all jobs modes are set correctly and appear in either config sync or DFS section. The

screenshot taken before should be used to check the jobs are in the correct mode.

- i. If the jobs are in the wrong mode please set the mode correctly with the bulk actions menu.
- 3. (only If IP Pool failover Mode is configured otherwise skip) use the screenshot taken above to verify the synciq pool mappings using the DR Dashboard mapping screen to verify they look correct.
- 4. Open License Manager Icon and verify Licenses are visible.
- 5. Open Inventory Icon and verifyClusters are displayed.
- 6. Log in to the Eyeglass web page and open the Eyeglass Main Menu > Notification Center and verify that the Alarm Severity Filter is correctly set

| 🗟 Notification C  | enter                   |  | _ <i>e</i> * × |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--|----------------|
| Configure SMTP    | Outgoing Email Ser      | ver Information  |                |
| Manage Recipients | Host Name*:             | smtp.mail.com  |                |
| Twitter           | Port*:                  | 587  |                |
| Slack             | From*:                  | a.b@c.com  |                |
|                   | Use Authentication:     | V  |                |
|                   | User:                   | a.b@c.com  |                |
|                   | Password:               |  |                |
|                   | Enable TLS:             | 1<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I<br>I |                |
|                   | Alarms more severe that | n the selected filter will also be emailed.  |                |
|                   | Alarm Severity Filter*: | CRITICAL   |                |
|                   | Test Recipient:         | Test Email Setting   | Save Close     |

8. And verify that the Email Recipients are correctly set with the correct Email Type.

| Configure SMTP    | Recipients | Email Type | delete |
|-------------------|------------|------------|--------|
| Manage Recipients |            |            |        |
| Twitter           |            |            |        |
| Slack             |            |            |        |
|                   |            |            |        |
|                   |            |            |        |
|                   |            |            |        |
|                   |            |            |        |

Validate - Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance

Auditor License Assignment

- This step is mandatory to ensure licenses are assigned to the correct cluster. This release no longer supports auto assigned license mode to clusters
- 2. Login to Eyeglass
- 3. Open License Manager
- 4. Click on Licensed Devices tab

| Manage Licenses | License Status of Mana | aged Devices  |               |   |               |   |               |
|-----------------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|
| License Devices | Name                   | Eyeglass      | Ransomware    |   | Easy Auditor  |   | Isilon Probe  |
|                 | Cluster2-7201          | Auto Licensed | Unlicensed    | * | Unlicensed    | * | Auto Licensed |
|                 | prod-cluster-8         | Auto Licensed | User Licensed |   | User Licensed | - | Auto Licensed |
|                 | prod                   | Auto Licensed | Unlicensed    | ~ | User Licensed | ~ | Unlicensed    |

 First STEP: Set each cluster that should NOT be licensed to Unlicensed status using the drop down menu.

- 6. 2nd STEP: Set each cluster listed to User Licensed for the product(s) that should be assigned to this cluster. Example the production writeable clusters should be set to User Licensed for Ransomware Defender or Easy Auditor.
- 7. Click the submit button to save.

Validate Ransomware Defender and Easy Auditor settings

Validate that Ransomware Defender and Easy Auditor settings preserved after upgrade:

- 1. (if Ransomware Defender) verify
  - a. Flag as False Positive (2.5.6 and lower) / Learned Thresholds
     (2.5.7 and higher)
  - b. Ignored List
  - c. Threshold window all settings
  - d. Allowed Files (2.5.6 and lower) / File Filters (2.5.7 and higher)
  - e. Monitor Only Settings (2.5.7 and higher)
- 2. (if Easy Auditor) verify
  - a. Active Auditor Triggers configured

© Superna LLC
## **3. Eyeglass VMware MarketPlace Deployment** Guide

Home Top

- Overview
- Subscribe to the MarketPlace Eyeglass OVA
- How to Deploy Eyeglass from a Content Library

#### Overview

A new deployment option for on premise vCenter content library subscription option or VMware on AWS Cloud deployment. This guide will cover the content library solution with the VMware marketplace.

NOTE: Not all versions of vcenter content library are tested. If you receive a deployment error due to compatibility issue with your version of vcenter, please download the OVA for direct deployment from https://support.superna.net and deploy the OVA following this guide.

Subscribe to the MarketPlace Eyeglass OVA

- 1. Click this link to go to the Eyeglass Marketplace listing. You will need to login with your vmware account to be able to subscribe to the appliance.
- 2. Click subscribe button



 Select the on premise option and name the content library entry Eyeglass

| Subscribe     | Superna Eyeglass Cluster Witness Solution with VMwa | re Cloud ×       |
|---------------|---|------------------|
| 1. SECURITY   |   |                  |
| 2. SETTINGS   | Select Platform                                     |                  |
| 3. AUTOUPDATE | Select Version 2.5.7 ~                              |                  |
| 4. EULA       | Subscription type Byol                              |                  |
|               | Content Library Name Eyeglass ① CANCEL              |                  |
|               |   |                  |
|               |   |                  |
|               |   |                  |
|               |   |                  |
|               |   | CANCEL BACK NEXT |

4. Enable auto update with 2 versions

| Subscribe     | Autoupdate Settings ×   |
|---------------|---|
| 1. SECURITY   | Autoupdate  |
| 2. SETTINGS   | Note: by enabling autoupdate feature Cloud Marketplace automatically More info    |
|               | Number of versions 2 ~  |
| 3. AUTOUPDATE | Note: Cloud Marketplace can keep your catalog / content library clean f More info |
|               |   |
|               | CANCEL BACK NEXT  |

- 5. Accept the EULA check box and click finish
- 6. Click the Check subscription status link



7. Scroll Down to get the subscription URL

| View - Publish - Manage -  | ettings *   |   |  |
|--|---|---|--|
| Logs   |   |   |  |
| 2020-07-07T12:08:33Z Fetch   | ng OVAs' metadata for subscripti  | n |  |
| 2020-07-07T12:08:34Z Succe   | s: Fetched OVA metadata   |   |  |
| 2020-07-07T12:08:34Z Catal   | g already exists in Cloud Direct  | r |  |
| Steps to create a sub<br>Subcription URL   | cribed catalog:   |   |  |
| Steps to create a subs<br>Subcription URL<br>https://s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.cod<br>• On the Catalogs tab, click Add<br>• Type a catalog name and optic<br>• Select Subscribe to an external<br>• Use the URL in Subscription UB  | Cribed catalog:<br>//cspmarketplacemainbuck/mari<br>iatalog.<br>nal description.<br>catalog.<br>t.ext box.                      | ] |  |
| Steps to create a subs<br>Subcription URL<br>https://s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com<br>• On the Catalogs tab, click Add<br>• Type a catalog name and optic<br>• Select Subscribe to an external<br>• Use the URL in Subscription UR<br>• Fill in other catalog settings am | Cribed catalog:<br>/cspmarketplacemainbuck/marl copy<br>latalog.<br>al description.<br>catalog.<br>. text box.<br>click Finish. | ] |  |

- 8. Copy the subscription URL
- 9. Login to vcenter and open the content library UI
- 10. Click + to add a new library

|             | 1 Name and location         | Name and location           |                            |           | o ∨ Storage |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|-------------|
|             | 2 Configure content library | Specify content library nam | e and location.            |           | 7.63 GB     |
|             | 4 Ready to complete         |                             |                            |           | 914 MB      |
|             | ,                           | Name:                       | Eyeglass                   |           |             |
|             |                             | Notes:                      |                            |           |             |
|             |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
|             |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
|             |                             | vCenter Server:             | vc-corp.corp.superna.net < |           |             |
|             |                             |                             |                            |           | C-          |
| ns          |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
| √ Target    |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
|             |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
| unty-01-L01 |                             |                             |                            |           |             |
|             |                             |                             | CANCEL                     | BACK NEXT |             |

11. Click next and switch to subscription library and paste the url into the url input.

| ✓ 1 Name and loc<br>2 Configure co | cation Configure content library netert library Local libraries can be published externally and optimized for syncing over HTTP. Subscribed | ) ∨ Storag<br>7.63 G |
|------------------------------------|---|----------------------|
| 3 Add storage<br>4 Ready to co     | e libraries originate from other published libraries.   | 914 M                |
|                                    | O Local content library   |                      |
|                                    |   |                      |
|                                    |   |                      |
|                                    |   |                      |
|                                    | Subscribed content library  |                      |
| ic.                                | Subscription URL: Example: https://server/path/lib.json   |                      |
| Target                             | Enable authentication   |                      |
|                                    |   |                      |
| ns V Target                        | Subscription URL: Example: https://server/path/lib.json   |                      |

12. Select a data store to store the OVA image

|             | <ul> <li>1 Name and location</li> <li>2 Configure content library</li> </ul> | Add storage               | fan de a 116 man e a       |          |                                |                     | ) V  | Storage |
|-------------|--|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|---------------------|------|---------|
|             | 2 Configure content library  | Select a storage location | for the library co         | ontents. |                                |                     |      | 7.63 GB |
|             | 4 Ready to complete  |                           |                            |          | т                              | Filter              |      | 914 MB  |
|             |  | Name ↑ 🔍 🗸                | Status 🗸                   | Туре     | <ul> <li>✓ Capacity</li> </ul> | ✓ Datastore Cluster |      |         |
|             |  | esxi-b2xx-16-Loc          | ✓ Normal                   | VMFS 5   | 7.5 GB                         |                     | - 88 |         |
|             |  | esxi-b2xx-21-Loc          | 🗸 Normal                   | VMFS 5   | 7.5 GB                         |                     | - 88 |         |
|             |  | esxi-b2xx-28-Loc          | 🗸 Normal                   | VMFS 5   | 7.5 GB                         |                     | - 88 |         |
|             |  | esxi-b2xx-34-Loc          | 🗸 Normal                   | VMFS 5   | 7.5 GB                         |                     | - 88 |         |
|             |  | esxi-b2xx-43-Loc          | 🗸 Normal                   | VMFS 5   | 7.5 GB                         |                     | - 88 |         |
|             |  | ISOs: isi-x4xx-01         | 🗸 Normal                   | NFS 3    | 389.57 TB                      |                     | - 64 |         |
|             |  | IT-Templates:x4x          | 🗸 Normal                   | NFS 3    | 389.57 TB                      |                     | - 88 | G       |
|             |  | 🗐 unty-01-L01             | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | VMFS 5   | 12 TB                          |                     |      |         |
|             |  | 🗐 unty-01-L02             | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | VMFS 5   | 12 TB                          |                     | - 64 |         |
| √ Target    |  | 🗐 v53-01-1001             | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | VMFS 5   | 14 TB                          |                     |      |         |
|             |  |                           |                            |          |                                | 17 items            |      |         |
| unty-01-L01 |  |                           |                            |          | CANCEL                         | BACK                |      |         |

- 13. Click next and then finish to create the library
- 14. This will trigger a download and may take time to complete before the template is available for deployment.
- 15. Done.

How to Deploy Eyeglass from a Content Library

- 1. Login to vCenter
- 2. Open Content Library
- 3. Click on Eyeglass Content Library
- 4. Right Click the OVA template

| vm vSphere Client  | Menu 🗸 🛛 🔍 S | Search in all environm      | ents                                     |              | C                                       | ?~     |
|--|--------------|-----------------------------|--|--------------|---|--------|
| <ul> <li>Eyeglass</li> <li>Templates</li> <li>Other Types</li> </ul> | 1            | Eyeglass                    | ACTIONS ~                                |              |   |        |
|  |              | Name ↑<br>및 superna_eyeglas | ss-1623418657285                         | OVF Template | <ul> <li>Stored</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul> | ∃ Lo ∖ |
|  |              |                             | Actions - superna_eyegiass-162341865/265 |              |   |        |
|  |              |                             | Export Item                              |              |   |        |

- 5. Select New VM from This Template Option
- 6. Follow the VM deployment Wizard and select options to deploy the Eyeglass VM.
- 7. On the VM Network tab make sure to change the Destination Eyeglass Network to a network in your vmware environment.



8. Data Disk Size must be left at 80GB. Do not change this value.

- 9. On the Customize Template tab --> Network section
  - a. Edit the pre-populated IP address, network mask and gateway to match your network environment.
  - b. Enter NTP IP address
  - c. Enter a host name
  - d. Enter DNS IP address (leave DNS search List blank)

| 1 Select a name and folder  | ✓ Network            | 7 settings   |
|---|----------------------|--|
| <ul> <li>2 Select a compute resource</li> <li>3 Review details</li> <li>4 Select storage</li> </ul> | eth0 Netmask         | The netmask for this interface 255.255.255.0         |
| <ul> <li>5 Select networks</li> <li>6 Customize template</li> <li>7 Ready to complete</li> </ul>    | eth0 Default Gateway | The default gateway for this interface 192.168.222.1 |
|   | NTP Servers          | Space-separated list of NTP servers                  |
|   | eth0 IP              | The IP address for this interface                    |
|   | Hostname             | VM hostname  |
|   | DNS                  | Space-separated list of DNS IP addresses             |
|   | Domain Search List   | Space-separated list of search domains               |

- 10. Complete the wizard to deploy the OVA appliance.
- 11. Complete the remaining installation tasks following the installation guide.

© Superna LLC

# 4. Eyeglass Search & Recover Installation and Upgrade Guide

Home Top

- VMware ESX Host Compute Configuration and Cluster Sizing
- Firewall Rules and Direction Table
- Eyeglass Search & Recover Installation Prep Steps
- Search & Recover OVA Deployment and Cluster VM Configuration
- How To Upgrade Search & Recover Cluster

VMware ESX Host Compute Configuration and Cluster Sizing

See Sizing guide here.

Firewall Rules and Direction Table

NOTE: These rules apply to traffic into the VM and out of the VM. All ports must be open between VM's, private VLAN's and firewall between VM's is not supported.

| Port                                  | Direction                   | Function   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Operating<br>System Open<br>Suse 15.3 |                             | It is customer responsibility to patch<br>the operating system and allow<br>Internet repository access for<br>automatic patching. The OS is not<br>covered by the support agreement. |
| 443 HTTPS (TCP)                       | Browser → Search<br>Cluster | UI Access, management tools (password protected)   |

| 22   | Admin PC →<br>Search Cluster      | Management access to the CLI                 |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| 8080 (HTTPS) over                          | Search Cluster →<br>PowerScale    | REST API Access                              |
| 445 TCP SMB authentication                 | Search Cluster →<br>PowerScale    | SMB authentication of user name and password |
| NFS <mark>(optional for</mark><br>content) | Search<br>Cluster →<br>PowerScale | File Content Ingestion                       |

## Eyeglass Search & Recover Installation Prep Steps

The Search & Recover appliance is based on the ECA cluster architecture and has similar steps to complete installation.

Before you begin, collect the information below and verify all pre-requistes are completed:

- 1. See the sizing your cluster based on your environment to determine the number of nodes required. Guide Here.
- Must have 4-7 IP addresses to assign during OVA deployment of the Search & Recover cluster depending on the size of the cluster ( 4 node or 7 node cluster)

a. Must have DNS IP, router IP, subnet mask, NTP server IP

3. **Permissions for Service Account:** PowerScale REST API access with file traverse permissions to ingest files and directories by the Search & Recover cluster. See the minimum permissions guide

for a full list of permissions required for the eyeglass service account used by all ECA cluster products. Guide here.

- 4. (optional skip this section if Meta Data only indexing is needed)
  - a. File Full Content data Indexing Requirements
  - b. Must have DNS smartconnect name assigned to a management IP pool in the System zone for the NFS export used to ingest content from the snapshots folder.
  - c. Get each Cluster GUID and name that will be indexed. Record these values for steps below.
    - Login to the cluster OneFS GUI and open the Cluster Management --> General settings menu and record the cluster GUID and cluster name. Example below.

| <b>OneFS</b>   | STORAGE                      |                           |                |                        | Logged in as <b>roc</b> | ot   P Review rece | ent events   Log out   Help |
|--|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Dashboard <del>-</del>   | Cluster Mana                 | gement <del>-</del>       | File Sy        | ystem <del>-</del> Dat | a Protection 🗸          | Access -           | Protocols -                 |
| General Settir   | ıgs                          |                           |                |                        |                         |                    |                             |
| Cluster Identity   | Email Settings               | Date & Time               | NTP            | SNMP Monitoring        | Remote Support          |                    |                             |
| Edit Cluster Iden  | tity                         |                           |                |                        |                         |                    |                             |
| - Cluster Identity<br>Cluster GUID<br>000743097b4a96c83            | re5140248193923b             |                           |                |                        |                         |                    |                             |
| Cluster Name<br>If this cluster is joined t<br>characters or fewer | o an Active Directory domain | , you must limit the clus | ter name to 11 |                        |                         |                    |                             |
| isilon-1   |                              |                           |                | ]                      |                         |                    |                             |

- e. Repeat for each cluster that will be licensed and indexed.
- f. Create an NFS export in the System Access Zone for full content on all clusters that will be indexed. See example below where the IP addresses entered are the Search & Recover cluster IP addresses. The export is created on the /ifs/.snapshot directory with root client list used and add all nodes except node 1.

| * Directory Paths            |        |  |
|------------------------------|--------|--|
| Remove path /ifs/.snapshot   | Browse |  |
| + Add another directory path |        |  |
| Description                  |        |  |
| Description                  |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
| 255 characters remaining     |        |  |
| Clients                      |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
| Always Read/Write Clients    |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
| Always Read-Only Clients     |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
| Root Clients                 |        |  |
|                              |        |  |
|                              |        |  |

### Search & Recover OVA Deployment and Cluster VM

#### Configuration

- 1. Download the OVA following instructions here
- 2. Deploy with vCenter

**NOTE:** vCenter 6.5 and 6.7 use FLASH or FLEX interface.

HTML5 interface is not supported.

- a. Select the OVF file with the required node count based on cluster sizing pre-requisite step.
- b. Set the node ip addresses, gateway IP, DNS, NTP IP and index volume size during the OVA deployment. Use the disk size values from this sizing table.

#### c. Note: Data disk size value MUST be left at the

default.

| Deploy OVF Template   | - 0  | ×     |
|---|--|-------|
| Customize the software so   | plution for this deployment.   |       |
| Source<br>OVF Template Details<br>Name and Location<br>Host / Cluster<br>Resource Pool<br>Storage<br>Disk Format<br>Network Mapping<br>IP Address Allocation<br><b>Properties</b> | Uncategorized<br>Data disk size<br>Size of the data disk, in GB. (minimum 400GB)<br>400<br>Application   |       |
| Ready to Complete   | ECA Cluster Name A unique name for this Search cluster. Must be all lower-case with no underscores, special characters, or spaces. Enter a string value with 2 to 10 characters.                               | ]     |
|   | Networking Properties         eth0 Netmask         The netmask for this interface.         .       .         Enter an IP address.  |       |
|   | eth0 Default Gateway         The default gateway for this interface.         Properties with invalid values will be left unassigned. The vApp will not be able to power on until properties have valid values. | all   |
|   | < Back Next > C  | ancel |

- d. Set the ECA cluster name (no special characters should be used, all lower case)
- e. Power on the OVA
- f. SSH to the node 1 IP address
- g. Login with user ecaadmin and default password 3y3gl4ss
- 3. Configure and test NTP (NOTE if Internet access is allowed for NTP protocol, then no configuration is needed, use this procedure to test access and or change NTP to an internal server IP)
  - a. sudo -s

- b. Enter ecaadmin password
- c. type yast (NOTE navigation uses the Arrow keys and TAB key and shift TAB key to move between selections on the UI)
- d. Select Network Services to enter NTP Configuration

| ortal Home Dashboard Current Project - File Man                             | ager Tools ~   |
|---|--|
| 👻 🛪 💿 UNLOCK & VIEW 🕥   | NISTORY 🗇 TODO 🔄 LINK VIEWEN 🗄 MORE II 🖓 🔥 Al charges saved at 7.32 AM. Datue: Drat.   |
| Edition Quick Start Guide Eyeglass All Product Installation a               | and Upgrade Guides Assignment: Ass |
| ch & Recover Installation<br>Suide Software HOME INSERT                     | LDAP and Kerberos Client, View Table   |
| Edite Notwork dServices C Boo   | NFS Client = = = = = Accylos - A Professor   |
| Security and Users  | NTP Configuration         Full crack them           Network Services (xinetd)         Construction   |
| A Support Changes   | Proxy Pangraph Styles Editing View Validation  |
| e Isik ni installation guide  | Sambe Server Crick Med S   |
| 2. Set the ECA o<br>3. Power on the<br>4. SSH to the no<br>5. Login with us | eluster name (no special characters should be used, all lower case)<br>OVA<br>ode 1 IP address<br>re ecaadmin and default password 3y3gl4ss<br>[Run] [Qu   |
| 2 Configure NTD   |  |

- e. Test Access to Internet NTP servers
  - i. TAB to the Edit button and press enter

| Advanced NT   | P Configurati |              |  |           |  |                          |  |               |  |
|---|---------------|--------------|--|-----------|--|--------------------------|--|---------------|--|
| General Se  | ttings—Secur  | ity Setting  | S  |           |  |                          |  |               |  |
| Start NI  | hronize withc | out Daemon   |  |           |  |                          |  | ssignee: 🧕 Ar |  |
| on a new (x) Now  | and on Boot   |              |  |           |  |                          |  | lwner: 🧕 🗴 Ar |  |
| Buide   |               |              |  |           |  |                          |  |               |  |
| Builde Runtime C  Edit on Auto  | onfiguration  | PolicyCusto  |  |           |  | e<br>Full<br>Screen      | AB   |               |  |
| Luide Runtime C<br>- Edition Autor<br>- Edition Ouick Start Guide<br>Dude for BEFL and<br>- 7.1 and DEFL and<br>- V Installation Guide<br>a Islich Installation guide | onfiguration  | PolicyCuston |  |           |  | Pull<br>Screen S<br>View | AB Check Broken<br>spetling Links<br>Validation  |               |  |
| Lucia Curtime C<br>Edit or Just Cartes<br>Tells on Ouck Start Guide<br>Cr44 at Interval<br>Cr44 at Interval<br>Cr44 at Interval<br>Synchror<br>Server                 | onfiguration  | PolicyCustor | m Policy<br>************************************ | Paragraph |  | Full<br>Screen S<br>View | AB Creat strating<br>patting Units<br>Validation |               |  |

iii. Now Tab to the Test button and press enter

| ortal Home Server  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
|  | UNLOCK & VIEW     HISTORY I TODO ILINK VIEWER   MORE - % All changes served at 730 AM.  Propress AI Product Installance     Server Sectings      Kyle     Addressecover Installation and Upgrade Guide     J., opensuse, pool, htp.org #################################### | Status: Draft<br>Assignee: Andrew<br>Owner: Andrew |
| ered Agent vAPP Install<br>Suide<br>1 Edition Upgrade Guide<br>1 Edition Quick Start Guide<br>Suide for RHEL and<br>0 7.4 and 7.5<br>ar-V Installation Guide | Trest and responds properly.  |  |
| ar islion installation guide   | 2. Set the ECA cluster name (no special characters should be used, all lower case)<br>3. Power on the OVA<br>4. SSH to the node 11P address<br>6. Login with user even showpend default password 3y3g/4ss   |  |

- v. If Internet access is enabled then test response will look like the image above.
- vi. If it fails
  - Replace the NTP server entry with your Internal NTP server IP address
  - 2. Use the **TAB** key to select the OK button, press enter
  - 3. Press **F10** to exit the NTP configuration screen
  - 4. Use the **TAB** key to Select the YAST **Exit** button.
- vii. Repeat NTP test and/or configuration on ALL Search nodes
- 4. Configure Cluster Master Configuration file
- 5. <u>IMPORTANT: Next step must be run as ecaadmin user. If still</u> root user from previous steps exit before continuing.
- 6. IMPORTANT: Next step must be run from Search node 1
  - Run the cluster setup command (sets up SSH between nodes, configures master file, set password for administration WebUI)

- i. NOTE: This will setup ssh access between nodes and configure the cluster.
- ii. Type y or yes when prompted to continue.
- iii. You will be prompted to enter the default password to complete this setup process. The default password is 3y3gl4ss.
- iv. You will prompted to login to each node during this one time process
- v. Run setup command: ecactl components configurenodes
- vi. After the setup completes on all nodes verify the contents of the master configuration file
  - 1. cat /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
  - 2. Verify the ip addresses are listed for each node
  - Verify the cluster name is correctly set in the file variable export ECA\_CLUSTER\_ID=
- b. (Skip section if you only plan on indexing metadata) Configure NFS Export for Content Ingestion ONLY
  - Search and Recover uses PowerScale snapshots to ingest content. Follow the steps below to add the export to each of the VM's.
  - ii. What you will need to complete this step on nodes 2 x (where x is the last node IP in the cluster):
    - Cluster GUID and cluster name for each cluster to be indexed

- 2. Cluster name as shown on top right corner after login to OneFS GUI
- iii. Change to Root user
  - 1. sudo -s
  - 2. enter ecaadmin password 3y3gl4ss
- iv. Create local mount directory (repeat for each cluster)
  - 1. mkdir -p

/opt/superna/mnt/search/GUID/clusternamehere/ (replace GUID and clusternamehere with correct values)

- Use this command to run against all nodes, you will be prompted for ecaadmin password on each node.
  - a. ecactl cluster exec "sudo mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/search/00505699937a5e
     1f5b5d8b2342c2c3fe9fd7/prod-cluster"
- <u>(Skip this section if you only plan on indexing</u> metadata) Configure automatic NFS mount Required for Full Text Indexing
  - 1. Prerequisites
    - a. This will add a mount for content indexing to FSTAB on all nodes
    - b. Build the mount command using cluster guid and cluster name replacing the yellow highlighted sections with correct values for

your cluster. NOTE: This is only an example

- c. You will need a smartconnect name to mount the snapshot folder on the cluster.
   The Smartconnect name should be a system zone IP pool
- d. Replace smartconnect FQDN and <> with a DNS smartconnect name
- e. Replace <GUID> with cluster GUID
- f. Replace <name> with the cluster name
- 2. On each node in the cluster:
  - a. ssh to the node as ecaadmin
  - b. sudo -s
  - c. enter ecaadmin password
  - d. echo

'<CLUSTER\_NFS\_FQDN>:/ifs/.snapshot
/opt/superna/mnt/search/<GUID>/<NAME>
nfs defaults,nfsvers=3 0 0'| sudo tee -a
/etc/fstab

- e. mount -a
- f. mount to verify the mount
- g. exit
- h. Login to next node via ssh
- 3. repeat steps on each node

## 4. NOTE: The mount must exist BEFORE you start the cluster.

- 7. Start up the cluster
- 8. <u>IMPORTANT: Next step must be run as ecaadmin user. If still</u> root user from previous steps exit before continuing.
- 9. <u>IMPORTANT: Next step must be run from Search node 1</u> ecactl cluster up
  - a. Wait until all steps complete on all nodes verify no error messages are deplayed
  - b. Administration WebUI password
    - When prompted enter a secure strong password 8 characters or longer with upper case, lower case, numbers and special characters. This password protects access to administration webUI.
- 10. Get the Search appliance id and make a record of it will be required to retrieve license ecactl version
- 11. Deployment done
- 12. NEXT Steps Search & Recover Cluster Logical Configuration
  - a. Configuration steps to add licenses, add clusters, add index folders is covered in the Quick Start Steps of the Search & Recover Admin guide.

How To Upgrade Search & Recover Cluster

- 1. NOTE: Always take a vmware level snapshot of all VM's before any upgrade to be able to roll back to a previous release.
- 2. NOTE: Contact support before any upgrade to get upgrade changes between releases for compatibility of the index.
- NOTE: New permissions are required for the latest release for the service account used by Search Update the minimum permissions for the eyeglassSR user follow the guide here and apply all permissions again to ensure all permissions are correct.
- 4. Login to the support site https://support.superna.net and download the offline Search & Recover upgrade file
- Using a tool like Winscp copy the upgrade file to node 1 using ecaadmin user to authenticate
- 6. shutdown the cluster
  - a. Login to node 1 as ecaadmin over ssh
  - b. run the command "ecactl cluster down"
  - c. wait for the cluster to shutdown
  - d. Update EyeglassAdminSR service account with an additional permission or verify the service account has the correct permissions. Verify all permissions listed here have been applied by running the command isi auth roles view EyeglassAdminSR. The networking previlege is now required.
  - e. Modify the install file copied to the cluster node 1
    - i. Assuming the file was copied to default location in /home/ecaadmin
    - ii. cd /home/ecaadmin

iii. chmod 777 <a>rame of install file here></a>

- f. Run the installer
  - i. ./name of install file here
  - ii. when prompted enter the ecaadmin password
  - iii. wait for all nodes to be upgraded to the new version
- g. Start the cluster
  - i. ecactl cluster up
  - ii. wait until all nodes are started
- h. done.

© Superna LLC

## 4.1. Search & Recover Hyper-V Deployment

Home Top

• Deploy HyperV Search & Recover Appliance

## Deploy HyperV Search & Recover Appliance

- 1. Add 16GB RAM
- 2. Deploy 2nd vhdx disk for data [400GB]
  - a. Configure /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf with ip addresses of all ECA nodes on node 1 master.

| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk | You can create a blank virtual hard disk or copy the contents of an existing physical di<br>Create a new blank virtual hard disk<br>Size: 400 GB (Maximum: 64 TB)<br>Copy the contents of the specified physical disk: |
|---|--|
| Key Storage Drive disabled  | Controller:  |
| Memory  | IDE Controller 0   |
| 16000 MB  | Media  |
| Processor OS drive  | You can compact, convert, expand merge, reconnect or shrink a virtual hard disk  |
| 1 Virtual processor   | by editing the associated file. Secify the full path to the file.  |
| IDE Controller 0  | Virtual hard disk:   |
| Hard Drive  | aled\111-19085-brch\4\Superna_Search.1.1.1-19085-lp15.1.x86_64_2.vhdt  |
| Superna_Search.1.1.1-m.   | Data disk New Edit Inspect Browse  |

- 3. Boot up and wait for 15-20 minutes to allow script to run
- 4. Login to node 1

- 5. Check the on-boot script log and run the command [Also do this on on all node]
  - a. tail -4 /var/log/superna-on-boot.log



- 6. Run the command and enter `ecaadmin` passwd [3y3gl4ss] then configure network for the nodes
  - a. sudo -Ei spy-hyperv-setup



b.

 [IMPORTANT: Run this step after 7-8] Node1 is Master node. The rest are child nodes. Enter `y` for node 1 ONLY. Do not press `y` until node 2-4 are marked as `n`.Go to the next step.

```
Will this node be the master? (y/N):
```

- 8. Repeat step 4-6 on node 2-4
- 9. Node 2-4, when prompted for `master` node, Enter `n`
- 10. Go to step 7 and press `y` to complete the master node setup
- 11. Enter cluster name and the child nodes IP [space separated]

a.



12. Wait for it to finish then exit the nodes and log back in

| Done!<br>Waiting on nodes to complete setup         |
|---|
| Configuration pushed                                |
| Connecting to 172.25.5.15                           |
| Connecting to 172.25.5.16                           |
| Connecting to 172.25.5.17                           |
| Connecting to 172.25.5.18                           |
| Setup is complete.                                  |
| You may now proceed with application configuration. |
| done  |
| You have new mail in /var/mail/ecaadmin             |

а.

- 13. Use putty to access node 1
- 14. Done
- 15. Configuration tasks should be completed following the Normal guide here.

© Superna LLC

## 4.2. How to Migrate Eyeglass Search Appliance Index from ECA OpenSuse 15.1 to OpenSuse 15.3 OS

Home Top

- When to use this procedure
  - Pre-Migrate steps
  - High Level steps
  - Detailed Steps
  - Vmware Steps to move the index to the new appliance
  - Power on New appliance

#### When to use this procedure

This procedure allow moving an index from an old appliance with 15.1 OS to a new appliance running opensuse 15.3. It will require VMware access to edit VM's and attach VMDK disk from the old appliance to the new appliance.

Pre-Migrate steps

- 1. Clone the existing VM to protect the index in case a roll back is required or backup the VM with vmware backup tools.
- 2. NOTE: No snapshots can exist on the VM for roll back since the VMDK disks cannot be moved to another VM if snapshots exist.
- 3. NOTE: if no backup has been completed and issues impact the index disk during migration the only method to revert requires a backup or clone of the VMDK. The other option is re-index the data using the new appliance vs backup or cloning the old appliance.

High Level steps

- 1. deploy Superna Search appliance
- 2. configure NFS mounts
- 3. Create a backup of old appliance
- power on new vApp to make sure all nodes are up and reachable, power off
- 5. remove without delete hard disk 2 from old vApp node 1-N
- 6. remove/delete hard disk 2 on node1-4 of new vApp and add removed hard disks from old vApp to new vApp node 1-N
- 7. power on new vApp
- 8. copy zip to new vApp and restore configuration from backup

#### **Detailed Steps**

- 1. Create Search Cluster backup on old appliance:
  - a. SSH to ECA node 1 as user: ecaadmin
  - b. Type command: ecactl cluster backup
  - c. Follow this procedure to retrieve this backup file. Find the section on how to retrieve the backup file on this link.
- 2. Create logs folder under /opt/data/superna on all ECA nodes
  - a. cd /opt/data/superna
  - b. mkdir logs
  - c. chmod 775 logs
  - d. Repeat the above steps on all ECA nodes
- 3. Bring down old ECA cluster
  - a. SSH to ECA node 1 as user: ecaadmin

- b. Type command: ecactl cluster down
- 4. Using vCenter UI, power off the vApp
  - a. Download new Eyeglass Search OVF based on OpenSuse
     15.3 and deploy these vApp, as per documented install
     procedure
- Configure the new Eyeglass Search vApp to have the same configuration as the old Eyeglass Search vApp. Assign the following when deploying new vApp
  - a. Same ECA cluster name
  - b. Same IP Addresses for ECA nodes
- Once the deployment of new vApp has been completed, power on this new vApp and then
  - a. SSH to this new ECA node 1 as user ecaadmin
  - b. Type command: ecactl components configure-nodes
  - c. Edit the Search Cluster backup zip file (Open this zip file by using zip tool utility e.g. 7-zip) to remove known\_host file from each node folders in that backup zip file, under path /<nodex>/home/ecaadmin/.ssh/
  - d. Copy the updated Search cluster backup zip file to this new ECA node 1. Use WinSCP
  - e. Restore from the backup use command: ecactl cluster restore --path --path --path -to-copied-backup-file>
- 7. Once restore has completed, create local directory on ECA node 2 last node for mounting PowerScale Snapshot NFS export (*Only If require Content Ingestion*)
  - a. ssh to ECA node 1 as user ecaadmin
  - b. sudo su -

#### c. mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/search/<GUID-of-PowerScale-Cluster>/<Cluster-name>

- d. Repeat the above steps for ECA node 3 last node
- e. Modify file /etc/fstab on ECA node 2 ECA last node.
- f. Open the copied fstab file from old ECA node 2 and copy the mount to the PowerScale Snapshot folder setting line and insert this into the fstab file on new ECA node 2 - last node
- g. On each node (Node 2 last node) complete these steps:
- h. ssh ecaadmin@x.x.x.x (ip of each eca node)
- i. sudo -s (enter ecaadmin password when prompted)
- j. nano /etc/fstab
- k. paste mount line into the file control+x to save and exit
- I. Test the mount in fstab on the node
- m.NOTE: you should still be the root user from above steps
- n. type command --> mount -a
- o. if no mount error you should not see any output from this command
- p. Check mount and type --> mount [enter]
- q. Review the output to make sure the mount is visible
- r. Repeat all steps above on ECA node 2 last node
- 8. Upgrade to the latest code
  - a. copy upgrade file to node 1
  - b. chmod 777 <upgrade file>
  - c. ./<upgrade file>
- 9. done

- 1. Vmware Steps to move the index to the new appliance
  - Edit the setting of the new ECA VM node 1 (Warning: Do this on the new ECA vApp VMs, do not do this step on the old ECA vApp VMs), and remove Hard Disk 2 with option "Remove from virtual machine and delete files from disk". Example:

3. Edit the setting of the old ECA VM node 1 (Now do this step on the old ECA vApp VMs) and record the Datastore Disk File location for Hard Disk 2 and then remove only from VM inventory (Warning: Only remove from VM, but do not delete files from disk). Chose: "Remove from virtual Machine". Example:

| Hardware Options Resources vs  | 5ervices   | Virtual Machine Version:   |
|--|--|--|
| Show All Devices   | Add Restore  | This device has been marked for removal from the virtual<br>machine when the OK button is clicked.       |
| Hardware   | Summary  | To cancel the removal, click the Restore button.   |
| Memory CPUs Video card VMCI device USB controller SCSI controller 0 Hard disk 1 Hard disk 2 (removing) Network adapter 1 | 4<br>Video card<br>Deprecated<br>Present<br>LSI Logic Parallel<br>Virtual Disk<br>Removed<br>RansomWare Defender | Removal Options<br>Remove from virtual machine<br>Remove from virtual machine and delete files from disk |
|  |  |  |

5. IMPORTANT STEP: Record the location of the VMDK disk on the datastore and record this path and for use in a later step. NOTE: Record the full path in the data store to the disk for this VM, you will need this exact path to the vmdk disk to attach to the new appliance VM disk.

| ✓  | Summary                        | Monitor Configure Permis               | sions Files Hosts VMs                    |                         |  |                          |           |
|--|--------------------------------|--|--|-------------------------|--|--------------------------|-----------|
| <ul> <li>Image: Personal of the second s</li></ul> | Q Searc                        | h                                      |  |                         |  |                          |           |
| ZzLocal Host Datastores<br>53-01   | > 🗖                            | vSphere-HA                             | 1 New Folder                             | r   💣 Register VM 🛓 Dow | nload $\Box$ Copy to $\rightarrow$ Move to | o ≣) Rename to X Delete  | inflate   |
| = v52.01.201   | > 🗀 t                          | 0.1.0 ransom cluster HDFS Class 5      | Name T                                   | Size T                  | Modified T                                 | Type                     | T Path    |
| S3-01-202  | Actions - v53-01-202           | er Storage Monitor Training-1.8-Cl     | EyeglassClusterAgent 2-d9974926.hlog     | 0.09 KB                 | 09/14/2021, 5:41:26 AM                     | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| v53-01-203   | 1 New Virtual Machine          | q-2.2.0.0-3783.el7-vmware              | EyeglassClusterAgent 2-d9974926.vswp     | 16,777,216 KB           | 03/22/2021, 10:16:51 AM                    | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| v53-01-204   |                                | lassClusterAgent 2                     | ByeglassClusterAgent 2.nvram             | 8.48 KB                 | 09/14/2021, 5:41:56 AM                     | Non-volatile Memory File | [v53-01-2 |
| v 10 v57-01-Production-Apps  | Co Browse Files                | lassClusterAgent 2_1                   | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmdk              | 19,957,760 KB           | 09/14/2021, 6:05:14 AM                     | Virtual Disk             | [v53-01-2 |
| v57-01-4201  | PRegister VM                   | lassClusterAgent 3                     | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmsd              | 0 KB                    | 03/22/2021, 9:49:38 AM                     | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| 🗐 v57-01-4202  | C Refresh Capacity Information | lassClusterAgent 4                     | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmx               | 2.71 KB                 | 09/14/2021, 5:41:26 AM                     | Virtual Machine          | [v53-01-2 |
| esxi-b2xx-28-LocalDS   |                                | -DR(172.31.1.122 1231                  | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmx.lck           | 0 KB                    | 09/14/2021, 5:41:26 AM                     | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| unty-01-L01  | Ea increase Datastore capacity | -PROD[172.31.1.120%2f121]              | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmxf              | 0.15 KB                 | 06/02/2021, 2:48:28 PM                     | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| unty-01-L02  | Maintenance Mode               | * 5-Eyeglass[172.31.1.56] - old do not | EyeglassClusterAgent 2.vmx <sup>**</sup> | 2.71 KB                 | 09/14/2021, 5:41:26 AM                     | File                     | [v53-01-2 |
| 53-01-1001   | Move To                        | ma_Eyeglass lab 6 172.31.1.56          | EyeglassClusterAgent 2_1.vmdk            | 32,037,888 KB           | 06/02/2021, 2:33:41 PM                     | Virtual Disk             | [v53-01-2 |
| 953-01-1002  | Bename                         | ma_Eyeglass Probe.x86_64-1.51.8        | vmware-37.log                            | 176.48 KB               | 08/05/2021, 7:18:31 AM                     | VM Log File              | [v53-01-2 |
| а.   | Not turn to                    | ma_Eyeglass.2.5.7.1-21161-lp15.3.x     |  |                         |  |                          | 18 items  |

6. Re-add that 2nd disk from old ECA VM 1 to the correspondent new ECA VM 1. NOTE: You must use the VMDK using the location in the

## datastore from the step above, where the path to this 2nd disk was

recorded. Click Add

7.

| Ø                          | EyeglassClusterAgent 1 - Vi         | rtual Machine | e Properties 📃 🗖 🗙            |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Hardware Options Resources | vServices                           |               | Virtual Machine Version: 10 🔺 |
| Show All Devices           | Add Remove                          | Memory Config | juration                      |
|                            |                                     | 1011 GB       | Memory Size: 16 🗧 GB 💌        |
| Hardware                   | Summary                             | 512 GB        | Maximum recommended for this  |
|                            | 16384 MB<br>4                       | 256 GB        | guest OS: 1011 GB.            |
| 🛄 Video card               | Video card                          | 128 GB        | Maximum recommended for best  |
| 🚍 VMCI device              | Deprecated                          | 64 CB         | Default recommended for this  |
| USB controller             | Present                             |               | guest OS: 1 GB.               |
| SCSI controller 0          | LSI Logic Parallel                  | 32 GB         | Minimum recommended for this  |
| Hard disk 1                | Virtual Disk<br>BabsomWare Defender | 16 GB         | guest OS: 256 MB.             |
|                            | Kansoniware Derender                | 8 GB -        |                               |
|                            |                                     | 4 GB          |                               |
|                            |                                     | 2 (8)         |                               |
|                            |                                     | 2 30          |                               |
|                            |                                     | 1 GB          |                               |
|                            |                                     | 512 MB        |                               |
|                            |                                     | 256 MB 🚽      |                               |
|                            |                                     | 128 MB        |                               |
|                            |                                     | 64 MR         |                               |
|                            |                                     |               |                               |
|                            |                                     | 32 MB         |                               |
|                            |                                     | 16 MB         |                               |
|                            |                                     | 8 МВ -        |                               |
|                            |                                     | 4 MB          |                               |
| 1                          |                                     |               |                               |
|                            |                                     |               | OK Cancel                     |
|                            |                                     |               |                               |

| Device Type   | Add Hardy   | vare  |
|---|---|---|
| What sort of device d<br>Device Type<br>Select a Disk<br>Create a Disk<br>Advanced Options<br>Ready to Complete | Choose the type of device you v<br>Serial Port  | e?<br>vish to add.<br>Information<br>This device can be added to this Virtual Machine |
|   | CD/DVD Drive<br>USB Controller<br>USB Device (unavailable)<br>CI Device (unavailable)<br>Ethernet Adapter<br>Hard Disk<br>SCSI Device (unavailable) |   |
|   |   |   |

9. Select "Use an existing virtual disk"

10.

| Ø   | Add Hardware  |
|---|---|
| Select a Disk   |   |
| Device Type<br>Select a Disk<br>Select Existing Disk<br>Advanced Options<br>Ready to Complete | A virtual disk is composed of one or more files on the host file system. Together these files appear as a single hard disk to the guest operating system.<br>Select the type of disk to use.<br>Disk<br>Create a new virtual disk<br>Use an existing virtual disk<br>Reuse a previously configured virtual disk.<br>Raw Device Mappings<br>Give your virtual machine direct access to SAN. This option allows you to use existing SAN commands to manage the storage and continue to access it using a datastore. |
|   | < Back Next > Cancel  |

Specify the correct Disk File Path (Warning: Do not choose wrong disk), use the path to the datastore and folder and vmdk recorded from the step above.

| Select Existing Disk         Device Type         Select Existing Disk         Advanced Options         Ready to Complete  | 2  |   | Add Hardware   |        | x |
|---|--|---|--|--------|---|
| Device Type         Select a Disk         Select Existing Disk         Advanced Options         Ready to Complete     Disk File Path          [v57-01-1201] EyeglassClusterAgent 4/EyeglassClust     Browse | <b>Select I</b><br>Whie                                | Existing Disk<br>ch existing disk do you                  | u want to use as this virtual disk?                                  |        |   |
|   | Device 1<br>Select a<br>Select I<br>Advance<br>Ready b | Type<br>Disk<br>Existing Disk<br>ed Options<br>o Complete | Disk File Path<br>[v57-01-1201] EyeglassClusterAgent 4/EyeglassClust | Browse |   |

13. Accept the default advanced options and click "Next"

12.

14.

| Ø   | Add Hardware   | x   |
|---|--|-----|
| Advanced Options<br>These advanced optio  | ns do not usually need to be changed.  |     |
| Device Type<br>Select a Disk<br>Select Existing Disk<br>Advanced Options<br>Ready to Complete | Specify the advanced options for this virtual disk. These options do not normally need to be changed.          Virtual Device Node         SCSI (0:1)         Mode         Independent         Independent disks are not affected by snapshots.         Persistent         Changes are immediately and permanently written to the disk.         Nonpersistent         Changes to this disk are discarded when you power off or revert to the snapshot. |     |
|   | < Back Next > Can  | cel |

15. Click "Finish"

#### 16.

| Ø   | Ac  | ld Hardware   |  |  |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| Ready to Complete<br>Review the selected opt                  | ions and click Finish to add  | the hardware.   |  |  |
| Device Type<br>Select a Disk                                  | Options:  | Options:  |  |  |
| Select Existing Disk<br>Advanced Options<br>Ready to Complete | Hardware type:<br>Create disk:<br>Virtual Device Node:<br>Disk file path:<br>Disk mode: | Hard Disk<br>Use existing disk<br>SCSI (0:1)<br>[v57-01-1201] EyeglassClusterAgent 4/EyeglassClusterAgent 4_1<br>Persistent |  |  |
|   | Disk mode.  | Folisiscent   |  |  |
|   |   |   |  |  |
|   |   |   |  |  |
|   |   |   |  |  |
|   |   | < Pack Finish Cancel  |  |  |
|   |   |   |  |  |
| Eye   | glassClusterAgent 1 - V   | firtual Machine Properties 📃 🗖 🗙   |
|---|---|--|
| Image: Show All Devices       Eye         Hardware       Options       Resources       vSer         Show All Devices       [         Hardware       [         Hardware       [         Memory       [         CPUs       [         Wideo card       [         WCI device       [         USB controller       [         SCSI controller 0       [         Hard disk 1       []         Network adapter 1       [] | glassClusterAgent 1 - V<br>vices<br>Add<br>Summary<br>16384 MB<br>4<br>Video card<br>Deprecated<br>Present<br>LSI Logic Parallel<br>Virtual Disk<br>RansomWare Defender | Intual Machine Properties       Image: Constraint of the second sec |
| New Hard Disk (adding)  | Virtual Disk  | Mode Independent Independent disks are not affected by snapshots. Persistent Changes are immediately and permanently written to the disk. Nonpersistent Changes to this disk are discarded when you power off or revert to the snapshot.   |
|   |   | OK Cancel  |

- 18. IMPORTANT STEP: Repeat the 2nd disk VMDK migration from the old appliance to the new appliance VM's for all remaining ECA VM's
- 19. Mandatory Step: Take a vmware level snapshot of all search nodes before proceeding to the next steps. This is the only way to roll back if any issues block the upgrade.
- 20. Done

17.

Power on New appliance

1. SSH to ECA node 1 as ecaadmin

- Ping each ip address in the cluster until each VM responds. NOTE:
   Do not continue if you cannot ping each VM in the cluster.
- 3. From ECA node 1: ecactl cluster up
- 4. Verify that new ECA can be brought up successfully
- 5. Verify Search license: searchctl licenses list
- 6. Verify registered PowerScale cluster: searchctl PowerScales list
- 7. Verify configured folder: searchctl folders list
- 8. Verify from Eyeglass Search UI https://<eca-node1-ip> that able to login and search the existing data.
- 9. Add new data and once the next incremental ingestion and commit has been completed, verify from Eyeglass Search UI.
- 10. Done
- 1.

© Superna LLC

# 5. Eyeglass Golden Copy Installation and Upgrade Guide

Home Top

- Overview
- VMware Requirements
- VM Specifications for 3 Scaling Configurations
- Cloud Storage Network Requirements
- Firewall Rules and Direction Table
- Firewall Diagram
- Isilon/Power Scale Cluster NFS Mount Preparation Steps (Mandatory)
- Eyeglass Golden Copy Service Account Preparation Steps (Mandatory)
- Golden Copy OVA Deployment and Cluster VM Configuration (Mandatory)
- How to Deploy Virtual Accelerator Nodes (VAN's) (Optional)
- Golden Copy and VAN VM node NFS Mount Configuration (Mandatory)
- How to Configure Multi Golden Copy VM Parallel Copy (Mandatory)
- How To Upgrade Golden Copy Cluster
  - Offline Cluster No Internet Method

#### Overview

Golden Copy VM contains all management and GUI functions and can copy data directly from a single VM. Additional Virtual accelerator nodes (VAN's) can be deployed to scale out the performance of the copy jobs.

VMware Requirements

1. vCenter 6.x, 6.5 and 7.0.1 Build: 17491160

VM Specifications for 3 Scaling Configurations

- 1. Small Configuration Lab testing 1 x VM with 4x vCPU , 16G of ram, 400G hard disk
- Small Configuration Production Use with default VM resources 1 x VM with 4x vCPU , 16G of ram, 400G hard disk
  - a. Limit of 4 folder definitions
  - b. > 4 folder definitions requires additional disk space to store file copy history for each folder. Additional 110 GB for 10 folders added
  - c. NOTE: Multi VM deployments provide additional disk space on the VM cluster for storing file copy history
  - d. disk latency read and write latency < 20 ms (test with command iotstat -xyz)
- Vertical Scaling high Performance Archiving 1 x VM with 12x vCPU, 32 G of ram, 600 G hard disk

- a. Before power on, modify RAM and CPU to match above settings
- b. > 4 folder definitions requires additional disk space to store file copy history for each folder. Additional 110 GB for 10 folders added
- c. disk latency read and write latency < 20 ms (test with command iotstat -xyz)</li>
- d. modify the following file to expand the parallel file copies per VM
  - i. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
  - ii. Add a line
    - 1. export ARCHIVE\_PARALLEL\_THREAD\_COUNT=400
  - iii. control+x to save and exit
  - iv. Change memory configuration (note the the spacing must be Exactly as shown below)

control+x to save and exit

- v. nano /opt/superna/eca/docker-compose.overrides
- vi. version: '2.4'

services:

indexworker:

mem\_limit: 8GB

mem\_reservation: 8GB

memswap\_limit: 8GB

archiveworker: mem\_limit: 8GB mem\_reservation: 8GB memswap\_limit: 8GB

kafka:

mem\_limit: 4GB mem\_reservation: 4GB memswap\_limit: 4GB

- 4. Scale out Performance high performance and concurrent copy jobs - 6 x VM with 4x vCPU , 16G of ram, 400G hard disk
  - a. > 4 folder definitions requires additional disk space to store file copy history for each folder. Additional 110 GB for 10 folders added
  - b. disk latency read and write latency < 20 ms (test with command iotstat -xyz)</li>

Cloud Storage Network Requirements

- 1. Direct NAT (private ip to public IP) network
- 2. Proxy configuration not currently supported

Firewall Rules and Direction Table

NOTE: These rules apply to traffic into the VM and out of the VM. All ports must be open between VM's, private VLAN's and firewall between VM's is not supported.

| Port   | Direction   | Function  |
|--|---|---|
| Operating System<br>Open Suse 15.1                           |   | It is customer responsibility to<br>patch the operating system<br>and allow Internet repository<br>access for automatic patching.<br>The OS is not covered by the<br>support agreement. |
| 22   | Admin PC $\rightarrow$ Golden<br>Copy VM  | Management access to the CLI  |
| 8080 (HTTPS) and 22<br>SSH                                   | Golden Copy VM $\rightarrow$ PowerScale   | REST API Access and SSH   |
| NFS UDP/TCP<br>port 111, TCP and<br>UDP port 2049<br>UDP 300 | Golden Copy<br>VM $\rightarrow$ PowerScale<br>Virtual<br>Accelerator<br>nodes $\rightarrow$<br>PowerScale | NFS mount in System Zone  |
| port 9020 9021 for<br>Dell ECS                               | Golden Copy VM<br>and VAN VM's -><br>S3 (https 9021)<br>(http 9020)                                       | S3 protocol (https 9021, http<br>9020)  |
| AWS  | Golden Copy VM<br>and VAN VM's -><br>S3 (https 443)   | S3 protocol (https 443)   |
| Azure Blob   | Golden Copy VM<br>and VAN VM's -><br>Azure Blob rest<br>api https 443                                     | Azure blob storage rest api   |

#### Firewall Diagram

#### Golden Copy - FireWall Requirements Golden Copy VM NFS mount to System needs ssh and HTTPS port 443 to S3 from Golden Zone to all Golden HTTPS 8080 API Copy and all virtual accelerator copy and virtual access nodes to S3 Target on premise or accelerator nodes Internet Cloud Provider PowerScale AWS S3 or Glacier Azure Blob. **Google Cloud**



Storage

# Isilon/Power Scale Cluster NFS Mount Preparation Steps (Mandatory)

- An IP pool created in the System access zone that with at least 3 Nodes as members. Must have DNS smartconnect name assigned to a management IP pool in the System zone for the NFS export used to read content from the snapshots folder and a 2nd NFS export for data recall.
- Get each Cluster GUID and name that will be indexed. Record these values for steps below.
  - a. Login to the cluster OneFS GUI and open the Cluster Management --> General settings menu and record the cluster GUID and cluster name. Example below.

| <b>OneFS</b>  | STORAGE<br>ADMINISTRATION                          |                          | Logged in as <b>roo</b>      | t     P <u>Review rece</u> | ent events   Log out   Help |
|---|--|--------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Dashboard 🗸   | Cluster Management <del>-</del>                    | File System <del>-</del> | Data Protection <del>-</del> | Access -                   | Protocols -                 |
| General Settin  | gs   |                          |                              |                            |                             |
| Cluster Identity  | Email Settings Date & Time                         | NTP SNMP Mon             | itoring Remote Support       |                            |                             |
| Edit Cluster Ident  | ity  |                          |                              |                            |                             |
| - Cluster Identity<br>Cluster GUID<br>000743097b4a96c87                         | e5140248193923b                                    |                          |                              |                            |                             |
| Cluster Name<br>If this cluster is joined to<br>characters or fewer<br>isilon-1 | an Active Directory domain, you must limit the clu | ster name to 11          |                              |                            |                             |

- 4. Repeat for each cluster that will be licensed and used as a source cluster to copy data.
- 5. Create an NFS export in the System Access Zone for full content on all clusters that will be used as a source for archiving data. See example below where the IP addresses entered are the Golden Copy VM's. The export is created on the /ifs/.snapshot directory with root client list and clients list. Add Golden Copy and all Virtual Accelerator Node IP addresses.

| Directory paths                       |        |  |
|---------------------------------------|--------|--|
| Remove path /ifs/.snapshot            | Browse |  |
| + Add another directory path          |        |  |
| Description                           |        |  |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
| 255 characters remaining              |        |  |
| Clients                               |        |  |
| 172.31.1.141                          |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
| Always read/write clients             |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
| Always read-only clients              |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
| Poot clients                          |        |  |
| 172.31.1.141                          |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |
|                                       |        |  |

7. Create the recall NFS folder /ifs/goldencopy/recall using the cluster root user over ssh. Then create the export.

| Export                             |        |
|------------------------------------|--------|
| Directory paths                    |        |
| Remove path /ifs/goldencopy/recall | Browse |
| + Add another directory path       |        |
| Description                        |        |
|                                    |        |
|                                    |        |
| 255 characters remaining           |        |
| Clients                            |        |
| x.x.x                              |        |
|                                    |        |
|                                    |        |
| Always read/write clients          |        |
|                                    |        |
|                                    |        |
|                                    |        |
| Always read-only clients           |        |
|                                    |        |
|                                    |        |
| Root clients                       |        |
| x.x.x.x                            |        |
|                                    |        |

# Eyeglass Golden Copy Service Account Preparation Steps (Mandatory)

The Golden Copy appliance is based on the ECA cluster architecture and has similar steps to complete installation.

Before you begin, collect the information below and verify all prerequisites are completed:

1. **Permissions for Service Account:** PowerScale REST API access with file traverse permissions to ingest files and directories by the Golden Copy VM. See the minimum permissions guide for a full list of permissions required for the eyeglassSR service account used by all ECA cluster products. Guide here.

## Golden Copy OVA Deployment and Cluster VM

#### Configuration (Mandatory)

- 1. Download the OVA following instructions here
- 2. Deploy with vCenter

**NOTE:** vCenter 6.5 and 6.7 use FLASH or FLEX interface. HTML5 interface is not supported.

a. Select the OVA file.

b. Set the node ip addresses, gateway IP, DNS, NTP IP

| Customize the software   | solution for this deployment.  |        |
|--|--|--------|
| Source   |  |        |
| OVF Template Details<br>Name and Location<br>Host / Cluster<br>Resource Pool<br>Storage<br>Disk Format<br>Network Mapping<br>IP Address Allocation | Uncategorized<br>Data disk size<br>Size of the data disk, in GB. (minimum 400GB)   |        |
| Ready to Complete  | ECA Cluster Name A unique name for this Search cluster. Must be all lower-case with no underscores, special characters, or spaces. Enter a string value with 2 to 10 characters.                     |        |
|  | Networking Properties         eth0 Netmask         The netmask for this interface.         .         .         Enter an IP address.  |        |
|  | eth0 Default Gateway<br>The default gateway for this interface.<br>Properties with invalid values will be left unassigned. The vApp will not be able to power on un<br>properties have valid values. | til al |

- d. Set the ECA cluster name (no special characters should be used, all lower case)
- e. NOTE: If using vertical scaling configuration edit the VM configuration with 12 vCPU and 32G of ram before power on.
- f. Power on the OVA
- g. SSH to the node 1 IP address
- h. Login with user ecaadmin and default password 3y3gl4ss
- 3. Start up the cluster
- 4. ecactl cluster up

- 5. Get the appliance id and make a record of it will be required to retrieve the license.
  - a. ecactl version
- 6. Deployment done
- 7. NEXT Steps Golden Copy Cluster Logical Configuration
- Configuration steps to add licenses, add clusters, add archive folders is covered in the Quick Start Steps of the Golden Copy Admin guide.

#### How to Deploy Virtual Accelerator Nodes (VAN's)

#### (Optional)

This node type is optional and allows distributed scale out copy performance. The Golden Copy VM can copy files without VAN VM's deployed.

NOTE: VAN deployment requires 6 VM's

- 1. Download the OVA following instructions here
- 2. Deploy with vCenter

**NOTE:** vCenter 6.5 and 6.7 use FLASH or FLEX interface. HTML5 interface is not supported.

- a. Select the OVA file.
- b. Set the node ip addresses, gateway IP, DNS, NTP IP
- 3. Set the ECA cluster name (no special characters should be used, all lower case)
- 4. Repeat 6 times to deploy all 6 VM's

- 5. Power on the VM's
- SSH to the Golden Copy VM node 1 (first ip address VM deployed)
- 7. Login with user ecaadmin and default password 3y3gl4ss
- 8. Add each VM ip from node 1 using the command below:
  - a. ecactl cluster add-node <ip\_of\_new\_node> (note all 6VM's must be booted and pingable)
- 9. Upgrade each VM to the same release
  - a. Download the upgrade file to each VAN vm and run the installer after making it executable with chmod 777 /home/ecaadmin/upgradefilename.run
  - b. Run the upgrade
    - i. ./home/ecaadmin/upgradefilename.run
  - c. complete the upgrade on all VM's
- 10. ecactl cluster up (from node 1)
- 11. Verify boot process executes on all nodes in the cluster
- 12. This will now allow copy jobs to use additional VAN's to copy files.
- 13. Manage configuration from node 1 only.

Golden Copy and VAN VM node NFS Mount Configuration (Mandatory)

- Golden Copy uses PowerScale snapshots to copy content. Follow the steps below to add the NFS export to each of the VM's that was created in the steps above. 2 NFS mounts are required, 1 for copying data and one for recalling data.
- 2. You will need to complete this steps on all nodes
  - a. Cluster GUID and cluster name for each licensed cluster
  - b. Cluster name as shown on top right corner after login to OneFS GUI
- 3. Change to Root user
  - a. ssh to each VM as ecaadmin over ssh
  - b. sudo -s
  - c. enter ecaadmin password 3y3gl4ss
- 4. Create local mount directory (repeat for each Isilon cluster)
  - a. mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/search/GUID/clusternamehere/ (replace GUID and clusternamehere with correct values)
  - b. mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/recall/GUID/clusternamehere/
  - c. (Only if you have Virtual accelerator nodes, otherwise skip)
     Use this command to run against all Golden Copy nodes,
     you will be prompted for ecaadmin password on each node.
    - NOTE: Must run from the Golden Copy VM and all
       VAN VM's must be added to the eca-envcommon.conf file.
    - ii. NOTE: example only.

- iii. ecactl cluster exec "sudo mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/search/00505699937a5e1f5b5d8b2 342c2c3fe9fd7/clustername"
- iv. ecactl cluster exec "sudo mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/recall/00505699937a5e1f5b5d8b23 42c2c3fe9fd7/clustername"

#### 5. Configure automatic NFS mount After reboot

- a. Prerequisites
  - i. This will add a mount for content indexing to FSTAB on all nodes
  - Build the mount command using cluster guid and cluster name replacing the yellow highlighted sections with correct values for your cluster. NOTE: This is only an example
  - iii. You will need a smartconnect name to mount the snapshot folder on the cluster. The Smartconnect name should be a system zone IP pool
  - iv. Replace smartconnect FQDN and <> with a DNS smartconnect name
  - v. Replace <GUID > with cluster GUID
  - vi. Replace <name with the cluster name
- b. On each VM in the Golden Copy cluster:
  - i. ssh to the node as ecaadmin
  - ii. sudo -s
  - iii. enter ecaadmin password

- iv. echo '<CLUSTER\_NFS\_FQDN>:/ifs/.snapshot
  /opt/superna/mnt/search/<GUID>/<NAME> nfs
  defaults,nfsvers=3 0 0'| sudo tee -a /etc/fstab
- v. echo

'<CLUSTER\_NFS\_FQDN>:/ifs/goldencopy/recall /opt/ superna/mnt/recall/<GUID>/<NAME> nfs defaults,nfsvers=3 0 0'| sudo tee -a /etc/fstab

vi. mount -a

vii. mount to verify the mount

viii. exit

ix. Login to next node via ssh

- c. repeat steps on each VM
- 6. done

How to Configure Multi Golden Copy VM Parallel

#### Copy (Mandatory)

- 1. Vertically scaled VM or multi Golden Copy VM deployments
  - a. The default deployment limits concurrent copies to 1 folder with a full or incremental job running. This must be changed for multi VM deployments to allow multiple folders to execute concurrent jobs (full or incremental).
- 2. Single VM Limitations:
  - a. Single VM deployment is only supported with single folder concurrent job execution.
- 3. Steps to enable Job Concurrency

- a. Login to VM node 1 as eccadmin
- b. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
- c. Copy and paste the following settings shown below. This enables full or incremental on up to 30 folders defined within Golden Copy across all clusters added to Golden Copy.
  - i. Consult product supported limits of jobs in the admin guide.

# for blocking parallel jobs of any kind, true (enabled) by default
export ARCHIVE\_BLOCK\_PARALLEL\_JOBS=false
# number of parallel full archive jobs allowed, works if
`ARCHIVE\_BLOCK\_PARALLEL\_JOBS` is disabled
export ARCHIVE\_FULL\_PARALLEL\_JOBS\_ALLOWED=30
# number of parallel incremental archive jobs allowed, works if
`ARCHIVE\_BLOCK\_PARALLEL\_JOBS` is disabled
export ARCHIVE\_INCREMENTAL\_PARALLEL\_JOBS` allowed, works if
total number of parallel jobs allowed, defaults to 1 FULL and 1
INCREMENTAL
export ARCHIVE\_TOTAL JOBS ALLOWED=60

How To Upgrade Golden Copy Cluster

Offline Cluster No Internet Method

- 1. Login to the support site https://support.superna.net and download the offline Golden Copy upgrade file
- 2. Using a tool like Winscp copy the upgrade file to node 1 using ecaadmin user to authenticate
- 3. shutdown the cluster
  - a. Login to node 1 as ecaadmin over ssh
  - b. run the command "ecactl cluster down"
  - c. wait for the cluster to shutdown
  - d. Modify the install file copied to the cluster node 1
    - Assuming the file was copied to default location in /home/ecaadmin
    - ii. cd /home/ecaadmin
    - iii. chmod 777 <name of install file here>
  - e. Run the installer
    - i. ./name of install file here
    - ii. when prompted enter the ecaadmin password
    - iii. wait for all nodes to be upgraded to the new version
  - f. Start the cluster
    - i. ecactl cluster up
    - ii. wait until all nodes are started
  - g. done.

© Superna LLC

## 6. Eyeglass Clustered Agent vAPP Install and Upgrade Guide (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

Home Top

- Abstract:
- What's New
- Definitions
- Deployment and Topology Overview
  - Deployment Diagram (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
- ECA Cluster Sizing and Performance Considerations
  - ECA Cluster Size by Application (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
  - IP Connection and Pool Requirements for Analytics database Requires HDFS on the Cluster (Easy Auditor)
  - ECA Cluster Network Bandwidth Requirements to PowerScale (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
  - VMware ESX Host Compute Sizing for ECA nodes (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
    - VMware or Hyper-V Host Requirements
- ECA Cluster Deployment Topologies with PowerScale Clusters
  - Considerations & Requirements to Select a Deployment
     Option for the ECA Cluster:

- Security Firewall Port Requirements Ransomware Defender
   , Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor
  - Firewall Rules and Direction Table
- Eyeglass VM Pre-requisites Mandatory Step
  - Eyeglass License Requirements
- Deployment Overview
- Summary Overview of steps to install and configure Easy Auditor or Unified Ransomware Defender ,Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor
- Isilon/PowerScale Protocol Audit Configuration (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender , Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
  - Overview
  - Enable Protocol Access Auditing OneFS GUI
  - Disable High Rate Audit Events Onefs 8.2 and later (Mandatory Step)
    - Procedure to Disable High Rate Events
- Preparation of Analytics Database or Index (Easy Auditor) (Required Step)
  - OVA Install Prerequistes
  - Installation Procedure of the ECA Vmware OVA
- Time Configuration PowerScale, Eyeglass, ECA cluster (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

- How to disable VMware vSphere ESXi host time sync (Mandatory Step)
- How to Configure Audit Data Ingestion on the Isilon/Powerscale (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor) (Required Step)
  - Prerequisites for Isilon/Powerscale Audit Data NFS Export
  - Create a read-only NFS Export on the Isilon/PowerScale cluster(s) that will be managed
- Configure an NFS mount point on each ECA node to Read Audit data from Isilon/PowerScale (Required)
- Start up the ECA Cluster (Required)
- Verify ECA Remote Monitoring Connection from the Eyeglass Appliance (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender , Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)
- How to Backup and Protect the Audit Database with SnapshotIQ (Easy Auditor) (Required Step)
- Installation Complete
  - Ransomware and Easy Auditor IGLS CLI command Reference
- How to Upgrade the ECA cluster Software For Easy Auditor
   , Ransomware Defender and Performance Auditor
  - Steps to upgrade:
- How to Migrate ECA cluster settings to a new ECA cluster deployment - To upgrade Open Suse OS.
  - Prerequisites
- Monitor Health and Performance of an ECA Cluster (Optional)

- How to Verifying ECA Cluster Status
- How to Verify ECA containers are running
- Check cluster status and that all analytics tables exist (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor) (Optional Step)
- How to Check ECA node Container CPU and Memory Usage (Optional)
- How to Enable Real-time Monitor ECA cluster performance (If directed by support)
- ECA Cluster Modification Procedures (optional)
  - How to expand Easy Auditor cluster size
- Advanced Configurations (Optional)
  - How to Configure a Ransomware Defender Only Configuration (Skip if running multiple products)

#### Abstract:

This Guide provides a step by step procedure for installing the Superna Eyeglass clustered agent vAPP used by Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor. NOTE: Only follow steps in each section that names the product in the section

#### What's New

- 1. Syslog forwarding of ECA logs to eyeglass
- 2. Uses FluentD container for local logging and forwarding

- 3. Cluster Startup now checks HDFS configuration before starting and provides user feedback on validations
- 4. 3, 6 or 9 or upto 99 ECA node control and upgrade
- 5. Delayed startup option for containers
- 6. Statistics per container cli command
- 7. Kafka manager UI
- 8. New 2.5.5 Ransomware Defender does not require HDFS or a smartconnect name pool for HDFS but if Easy Auditor is also installed than HDFS pool is still required.

Definitions

1. ECA - Eyeglass Clustered Agent - the entire stack that runs in a separate VM outside of Eyeglass that processes audit data

Deployment and Topology Overview

Deployment Diagram (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor,

Performance Auditor)

This diagram shows a three node ECA cluster



## ECA Cluster Sizing and Performance Considerations

ECA Cluster Size by Application (Ransomware Defender, Easy

Auditor, Performance Auditor)

ECA clusters are 3-12 nodes or greater depending the applications running on the cluster and the number of events per second or by the number of cluster nodes that generate audit events. The minimum ECA node configurations that are supported for all deployments are documented below. **NOTE: New applications or releases with features that require more resources will require ECA cluster to expand to handle multiple clusters or new application services.** 

| Application   | Numb  | ESX      | ECA  | Network | Easy    | Host    |
|---------------|-------|----------|------|---------|---------|---------|
| Configuration | er of | hosts    | Node | Latency | Auditor | Hardwar |
| <b>-</b>      | ECA   | to split | VM   | NFS     | Databa  | е       |

|  | VM<br>nodes<br>Requir<br>ed   | VM<br>Workl<br>oad<br>and<br>Ensur<br>e High<br>Availa<br>blity | Size  | mount<br>For<br>Ransom<br>ware<br>Defende<br>r & Easy<br>Auditor | se<br>Networ<br>k<br>Latenc<br>y<br>betwee<br>n ECA<br>and<br>Power<br>Scale<br>storing<br>the DB | Configur<br>ation<br>Require<br>ments  |
|--|---|---|---|--|---|--|
| Ransomware<br>Defender<br>only <sup>3,6,8, 9</sup> | 3 ECA<br>node<br>cluster<br>(1 to 2<br>mana<br>ged<br>cluster<br>s OR<br><<br>6000<br>audit<br>events<br>per<br>secon<br>d)<br>6 ECA<br>node<br>cluster<br>(> 2<br>mana<br>ged<br>cluster<br>s OR<br><<br>8 OC<br>audit<br>events<br>per<br>secon<br>d) | 2   | 4 x<br>vCPU,<br>16G<br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS part<br>ition +<br>80G<br>disk | < 10 ms<br>RTT   | NA  | 2 socket<br>CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average<br>read and<br>write <<br>20 ms |
| Easy Auditor                                       | 6 ECA   | 2 6   | 4 x   | < 10 ms  | < 5 ms  | 2 socket   |

| Only <mark>2, 3, 5,7,8, 9</mark>  | node<br>cluster                                 |                  | vCPU,<br>16G<br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS part<br>ition<br>+ 80G<br>disk           | RTT            | RTT           | CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average<br>read and<br>write <<br>20 ms             |
|---|---|------------------|--|----------------|---------------|--|
| Ransomware<br>Defender And<br>Easy Auditor<br>Unified<br>deployment (<<br>18K events<br>per<br>second) <sup>3,5,7,8,</sup><br><sup>9</sup>                                      | 6 ECA<br>node<br>cluster                        | 2 6              | 4 x<br>vCPU,<br>16G<br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS<br>partitio<br>n<br>+ 80G<br>disk | < 10 ms<br>RTT | < 5 ms<br>RTT | 2 socket<br>CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average<br>read and<br>write <<br>20 ms |
| Very High IO<br>rate clusters (<br>> 18 K events<br>per<br>second) Rans<br>omware<br>Defender And<br>Easy Auditor<br>Unified<br>deployment <sup>3,5</sup><br>, <sup>7,8,9</sup> | 9 ECA<br>node<br>cluster                        | 3 <mark>⁰</mark> | 4 x<br>vCPU,<br>16G<br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS<br>partitio<br>n<br>+ 80G<br>disk | < 10 ms<br>RTT | < 5 ms<br>RTT | 2 socket<br>CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average<br>read and<br>write <<br>10 ms |
| Large node<br>count clusters<br>> 20 nodes.<br>The more<br>nodes to<br>monitor audit<br>data in real-<br>time requires  | 20 -30<br>nodes<br>= 9<br>VM's<br>> 30<br>nodes | 3 6              | 4 x<br>vCPU,<br>16G<br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS<br>partitio<br>n                  | < 10 ms<br>RTT | < 5 ms<br>RTT | 2 socket<br>CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average                                 |

| more VM's to<br>maintain<br>throughput for<br>a supported<br>configuration.<br>3,5,7,8,9                          | = 12<br>VM's  |     | + 80G<br>disk   |                |               | read and<br>write <<br>10 ms   |
|---|---|-----|---|----------------|---------------|--|
| Unified<br>Ransomware<br>Defender,<br>Easy Auditor<br>and<br>Performance<br>Auditor<br>Deployments<br>3,4,5,7,8,9 | 6-9<br>ECA<br>VM's<br>depen<br>ding<br>on<br>event<br>rates | 3 5 | 6 x<br>vCPU,<br><b>20G</b><br>Ram,<br>30G<br>OS<br>partitio<br>n +<br>80G<br>disk | < 10 ms<br>RTT | < 5 ms<br>RTT | 2 socket<br>CPU<br>2000<br>GHZ or<br>greater,<br>Disk IO<br>latency<br>average<br>read and<br>write <<br>10 ms |

<sup>1</sup> VMware OVA, Microsoft Hyper-v VHDX are available appliance platforms

<sup>2</sup> Contact support for reduced footprint configuration with 3 VM's only for low event rate environments.

NOTE: OVA default sets resource limit of 18000 MHZ for the OVA shared by all ECA VM nodes in the cluster. This limit can be increased if audit event load requires more CPU processing. Consult support before making any changes in vmware.

<sup>3</sup> NOTE: The ECA cluster is a real-time distributed processing and analysis platform which requires the ECA VM's to be on the same layer 2 subnet and low latency between the VM's. The VM's communicate between each other for many functions that requires low latency VM to VM communications. It is not supported to split the VM's in a single ECA cluster between data centers. The only supported distributed mode requires the Mini-ECA deployment architecture covered in this guide. <sup>4</sup> NOTE: Unified Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor requires additional resources in addition to the event rate sizing requirements. Each new application requires resources to maintain real time performance. Additional RAM is required on ECA nodes 2-N. The additional resources are 4 G RAM per ECA node and 2 additional vCPU per ECA node. If the event rate is very high resources may need to be increased beyond these initial settings. The Eyeglass VM also has increased RAM requirements for Performance Auditor. Consult the EyeGlass Scalability table for RAM upgrade requirements.

<sup>5</sup> NOTE: Audit Data retention > 1 year will increase the database size. As the database grows the number of VM's required to maintain the larger database will also need to increase. Any data retention > 1 year will require additional 3 ECA VM's added to maintain support for larger databases. Data retention set to greater than 365 days will require additional resources and a minimum of 3 additional ECA VM's to expand the cluster size.

<sup>6</sup> NOTE: Supported HA requires multiple physical Hosts to split VM's across hosts based on the size of the ECA cluster. ECA clusters with 3 VM's can tolerate N-1 VM failures, ECA clusters with 6 VM's can tolerate N-2 failures and ECA clusters > than 6 can tolerate N-3 VM failures.

<sup>7</sup> NOTE: All customers running Onefs 8.2 or later must disable directory open and directory close to reduce audit rate and reduce VM

#### footprint for a supported configuration. See instructions here to maintain support for your deployment.

8 NOTE: Storage vmotion or SDRS and DRS should be disabled since the ECA vm's are a real-time processing system.

9 NOTE: Archiving old gz files that collect on Onefs nodes is required to maintain performance of audit data ingestion. The cluster maintains old audit data in gz files once the active audit log reaches 1 GB. These files will collect for ever and NFS ingestion performance is impacted once the total GZ file count exceeds 5000 and will continue to degrade above this level. It is recommended to follow the procedures here or with Onefs 9.x use the auto archive of audit data feature.

IP Connection and Pool Requirements for Analytics database Requires HDFS on the Cluster (Easy Auditor)



ECA Cluster Network Bandwidth Requirements to PowerScale

(Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

Each ECA node process audit events and writes data to the analytics database using HDFS on the same network interface. Therefore the combined TX and RX constitutes the

peak bandwidth requirement per node. The table below is is a minimum bandwidth requirements per ECA VM example calculation.

HDFS Bandwidth estimates and guidelines for Analytics database network bandwidth access to PowerScale.

| Product Configuration  | Audit Event<br>rate Per<br>Second | Peak Bandwidth requirement   |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| i loudet conliguration   |                                   | Events per second per ECA<br>cluster (input NFS Reading<br>events from PowerScale to ECA<br>cluster) | Audit data Writes<br>Mbps per ECA cluster<br>(output HDFS writing<br>events) |  |  |
| Ransomware Defender only   | 2000 evts                         | Input to ECA $\rightarrow$ 50 Mbps   | Out of ECA < < 150<br>Mbps   |  |  |
| Unified Ransomware and<br>Easy Auditor - <b>Steady</b><br>state storing events | > 4000 evts                       | Input to ECA $\rightarrow$ 125 Mbps  | Out of ECA ← 500<br>Mbps - 1.2 Gbps  |  |  |
| Easy Auditor Analysis<br>Reports (long running<br>reports)                     | NA                                | Input to ECA (HDFS from<br>PowerScale) $\leftarrow$ 800 Mbps - 1.5<br>Gbps while report runs         |  |  |  |

VMware ESX Host Compute Sizing for ECA nodes

(Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

Audit data is a real-time intensive processing task. Auditing workload increases with file IO, and the number of users is a good metric to estimate file IO workload per user. The table below is based on an assumption of 1.25 events per second per user with a peak of 1.5 events per second and can be used as a guideline to help determine how many events per second your environment will produce. This will help you to determine the sizing of the VM and placement on ESX hardware.

VMware or Hyper-V Host Requirements

 NOTE: Vmware environments with DRS and SDRS should excempt the ECA and vApp from dynamic relocation as a best practise. As a real-time application with time skew requirements between VM's for processing and database operations, DRS movement of running VM's. For maintenance purposes it is ok migrate vm's as needed.

| Number of<br>active<br>concurrent<br>Users per<br>cluster 1 | ECA VM per Physical<br>Host<br>Recommendation | Estimated Events<br>Guideline                |
|---|---|--|
| 1 to 1000   | 1 Host  | =5000 * 1.25 = 6,250<br>events per second    |
| 5000 - 10000  | 2 Host  | =10,000 * 1.25 = 12,500<br>events per second |
| > 10000   | 3 Host  | = Number of users * 1.25<br>events/second    |

1 Active tcp connection with file IO to the cluster

## ECA Cluster Deployment Topologies with PowerScale Clusters

Considerations & Requirements to Select a Deployment Option for the ECA Cluster:

Centralized ECA deployment is easier to manage and monitor with distributed clusters. This requires a central ECA cluster to mont audit folder using NFS at remote locations. Follow the requirement guideles below to determine which deployment model should be used.

- When to use Mini ECA solution: latency between the site where the ECA database for Easy Auditor will reside or the site where Ransomware Defender Analytics cluster will reside and the site with a cluster that will be managed by Easy Auditor or Ransomware Defender is > 8 ms ping time should use Mini ECA with the intall guide here.
  - if latency is < 10 ms ping times then use NFS mount to the remote cluster for Easy Auditor/Ransomware Defender monitoring

2.

Security - Firewall Port Requirements Ransomware Defender , Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor

Firewall Rules and Direction Table

NOTE: These rules apply to traffic into the VM and out of the VM. All ports must be open between VM's, private VLAN's and firewall between VM's is not supported.

To harden the ECA we recommend firewalling the ports between

Eyeglass VM and the ECA vm. No external access to ECA is required

other than SSH access for management access. This is the #1

method to secure the ECA. We also recommend securing the trouble

shooting GUI's (HBASE, Spark and Kafka) to a management subnet.

Eyeglass GUI VM (Applies to Ransomware Defender & Easy Auditor)

Consult the EyeGlass firewall ports Required ports that must be in place for Addon products Ransomware and Easy Auditor are listed in the table for specific features.

| Ransomware Defender Only                            |                       |   |  |
|---|-----------------------|---|--|
| Port  | Directio<br>n         | Function  |  |
| Oper<br>ating<br>Syste<br>m<br>Open<br>Suse<br>15.1 |                       | It is customer responsibility to patch the operating system<br>and allow Internet repository access for automatic<br>patching. The OS is not covered by the support<br>agreement. |  |
| 2181<br>(TCP)                                       | Eyegla<br>ss →<br>ECA | zookeeper   |  |
| 9092<br>(TCP)                                       | Eyegla<br>ss →<br>ECA | Kafka   |  |
| 5514<br>(TCP)<br>as of                              | ECA →<br>Eyegla<br>ss | syslog  |  |

| 2.5.6<br>build<br>84              |   |   |  |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|--|
| 443<br>(TCP)                      | ECA →<br>Eyegla<br>ss   | TLS messaging   |  |
| 443<br>(HTT<br>PS)                | 2.5.7<br>Eyegla<br>ss→<br>Interne<br>t                          | Downloading file extension list whitelist this url<br>https://storage.googleapis.com/rwdefender.superna.net/su<br>pernaRansomwareFilters.json |  |
| NFS<br>(UDP<br>&<br>TCP)          | ECA →<br>Power<br>Scale   | NFS export mounting audit data folder on managed clusters   |  |
| NTP<br>(UDP<br>) 123              | $\begin{array}{l} ECA \rightarrow \\ NTP \\ server \end{array}$ | time sync   |  |
| Additional Ports for Easy Auditor |   |   |  |
| 8020<br>or<br>585<br>(TCP)        | ECA →<br>Power<br>Scale   | HDFS  |  |
| 1600<br>0,<br>1602<br>0           | Eyegla<br>ss →<br>ECA   | hbase   |  |
| 6066<br>(TCP)                     | Eyegla<br>ss →  | Spark job engine  |  |
|                    | ECA                                       |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| 9092<br>(TCP)      | Eyegla<br>ss><br>ECA                      | Kafka broker   |
| 4040<br>(TCP)      | Admin<br>browse<br>r →<br>ECA             | Running jobs monitor   |
| 8081<br>(TCP)      | Admin<br>browse<br>r →<br>ECA             | Spark Workers UI   |
| 8080<br>(TCP)      | Admin<br>browse<br>r →<br>ECA             | Spark Master UI  |
| 1601<br>0<br>(TCP) | Admin<br>browse<br>r →<br>ECA             | HBase Master UI  |
| 1603<br>0<br>(TCP) | Admin<br>browse<br>$r \rightarrow$<br>ECA | HBase Regionserver UI  |
| 1808<br>0<br>(TCP) | Eyegla<br>ss<br>VM→<br>ECA                | Spark History Report for monitoring running searches in Easy Auditor |
| 9000<br>(TCP)      | Admin<br>browse<br>r →<br>ECA             | Kafka UI   |

# Eyeglass VM Pre-requisites - Mandatory Step

#### Eyeglass License Requirements

- 1. Eyeglass must be deployed with or upgraded to the correct compatible release for the ECA release that is being installed.
- Eyeglass Licences for Easy Auditor or Ransomware Defender must be added to Eyeglass VM.
  - a. Login to Eyeglass
  - b. Open Licence manager Icon
  - c. Follow how to download license key instructions using the email license token provided with your purchase.
  - d. Upload the license key zip file from Step #3
  - e. Web page will refresh
  - f. Open License manager
  - g. Select Licensed devices tab
  - h. Set the license status for each product to user licensed for clusters that should be monitored by Ransomware Defender or Easy Auditor (depending on what license keys you purchased).
  - i. Set the license status for each product for each cluster that should not be licensed to **Unlicensed**. This is required to

ensure licences are applied to the correct cluster and blocked from being applied to the incorrect cluster.

| Manage Licenses | License Status of Manag | ed Devices    |               |   |               |   |               |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|
| License Devices | Name                    | Eyeglass      | Ransomware    |   | Easy Auditor  |   | Isilon Probe  |
|                 | Cluster2-7201           | Auto Licensed | Unlicensed    | Ŧ | Unlicensed    | * | Auto Licensed |
|                 | prod-cluster-8          | Auto Licensed | User Licensed | • | User Licensed | • | Auto Licensed |
|                 | prod                    | Auto Licensed | Unlicensed    | Ψ | User Licensed | * | Unlicensed    |
|                 |                         |               |               |   |               |   |               |
|                 |                         |               |               |   |               |   |               |

# Deployment Overview

The Eyeglass appliance is required to be installed and configured. The ECA Cluster runs in a separate group of VM's from Eyeglass.



Eyeglass will be responsible for taking action against the cluster and notifying administrators.

• PowerScale cluster stores analytics database (this can be the same cluster that is monitored for audit events)

- Eyeglass appliance with Ransomware Defender agent licenses or Easy Auditor Agent Licenses Or Performance Auditor Licenses
- PowerScale cluster with HDFS license to store the Analytics database for Easy Auditor only (Ransomware Defender only deployments no longer need HDFS pool as of release 2.5.5 or later)

Summary Overview of steps to install and configure Easy Auditor or Unified Ransomware Defender ,Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor

- 1. Configure Access Zone for Analytics database using an Access Zone with HDFS enabled
- 2. Configure SmartConnect on the Access Zone for the HDFS Database
- Configure Smartconnect name for NFS mount access to each managed cluster
- Create Eyeglass api token for ECA to authenticate to Eyeglass
- 5. Install ECA cluster
- 6. Configure ECA cluster master config
- 7. Push config to all nodes from master with ECA CLI
- 8. Start up the cluster software
- 9. Verify cluster is up and database is created

- 10. Verify Eyeglass Service heartbeat and ECA cluster nodes have registered with Eyeglass in the Managed Services Icon
- 11. Test Features

Isilon/PowerScale Protocol Audit Configuration (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender , Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

Overview

This section configures PowerScale file auditing required to monitor user behaviors. The Audit protocol can be enabled on each Access Zone independently that requires monitoring.

- 1. Enable Protocol Access Auditing OneFS GUI
  - a. Click Cluster Management > Auditing
  - b. In the Settings area, select Enable Configuration Change Auditing and Enable Protocol Access Auditing checkbox.
  - c. In the Audited Zones area, click Add Zones.
  - d. In the Select Access Zones dialog box, select one or more access zones, and click Add Zones (do not add Eyeglass access zone).

Disable High Rate Audit Events Onefs 8.2 and later

(Mandatory Step)

Directory Open and Directory close events generate unnecessary load on the cluster to log these event types, these event types are not used by Ransomware Defender or Easy Auditor (Default settings do not store these events in the Database). These events also cause performance issues on the cluster and high cluster overhead for these 2 events. It is required to disable these events.

Procedure to Disable High Rate Events

1.

- Login to the Onefs cluster over ssh as the root user.
  - Replace yellow highlight with access zone names that are enabled for auditing. This change takes effect immediately and will reduce audit overhead and increase auditing performance.
- isi audit settings modify --zone=
   zone\_name> --remove-auditsuccess=open\_directory,close\_directory

Preparation of Analytics Database or Index (Easy Auditor) (Required Step)

Prepare the PowerScale Cluster for HDFS

#### **Prerequisites**

- 1. Easy Auditor only
  - Must add minimum 3 PowerScale nodes added to new IP pool and assign the pool to the access zone created created for the audit database
  - 3. Must configure smartconnect zone name with FQDN

- 4. Must complete DNS delegation to the FQDN assigned to the new pool for HDFS access
- 5. Must Enable HDFS protocol on the new access zone (protocols tab in OneFS gui) Easy Auditor only
- 6. Must have HDFS license applied to the cluster
- 7. Must configure Snapshot schedule on the access zone path below every day at midnight with 30 day retention
- Optional Create SynclQ policy to replicate the db to a DR site.
  - 1. Activate a license for HDFS. When a license is activated, the HDFS service is enabled by default.
- 2. Create "eyeglass" Access Zone with path "/ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb" for the HDFS connections from hadoop eyeglass compute clients (ECA) and under Available Authentication Providers, select only the Local System authentication provider.
  - 3. Select create create zone base directory

| eunys   |   |                |                 |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
|---|---|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------|--|
| one Name  |   |                |                 |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
| eyglass   |   |                |                 |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
| one Base Dir  | rectory   |                |                 |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
| /ifs/data/igls/a  | analyticsdb   |                | Browse          |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
| Select a grou   | pnet  |                | *               |                   |                                 |                                 |          |  |
| uthentication   | pnet Providers entication Providers Provider                  | Grouppet       | ×               | Selected          | Authentication                  | Providers                       | Grounnet |  |
| uthentication<br>vailable Auth  | pnet Providers Providers Providers Provider data              | Groupnet       | ×               | Selected          | Authentication<br>Type          | Providers<br>Provider           | Groupnet |  |
| vuthentication<br>vailable Auth   | ppnet Providers Providers Provider Provider data              | Groupnet       | ×               | Selected          | Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | Providers<br>Provider<br>System | Groupnet |  |
| Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | ppnet Providers Providers Provider data DR-Testing-Zot        | Groupnet       | Add →           | Selected          | Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | Providers Provider System       | Groupnet |  |
| Authentication<br>vallable Auth<br>Type<br>Local<br>Local<br>File                     | pnet Providers entication Provider data DR-Testing-Zon System | Groupnet ne    | Add →           | Selected          | Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | Providers<br>Provider<br>System | Groupnet |  |
| Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Type<br>Local<br>Local<br>File  | ppnet Providers Providers Provider data DR-Testing-Zol System | Groupnet<br>ne | Add →<br>Remove | Selected<br>Order | Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | Providers Provider System       | Groupnet |  |
| Authentication<br>Authentication<br>Vallable Auth<br>Type<br>Local<br>Local<br>File   | ppnet Providers Provider Provider data DR-Testing-Zot System  | Groupnet<br>ne | Add →<br>Remove | Selected          | Authentication<br>Type<br>Local | Providers<br>Provider<br>System | Groupnet |  |

NOTE: Ensure that Local System provider is at the top of the list. Additional AD providers are optional and not required.

NOTE: In OneFS 8.0.1 the Local System provider must be added using the command line. After adding, the GUI can be used to move the Local System provider to the top of the list.

|  |      |            |            | •      |          |           |
|--|------|------------|------------|--------|----------|-----------|
|  | isi  | zone       | zones      | modify | eyeglass | add-auth- |
|  | prov | viders=loo | cal:system |        |          |           |
| View Access Zone Deta<br>* = Required field  | ils  |            |            |        | Help     |           |
| Settings     Zone Name     eyeglass     Zone Base Directory     //fs/data/igls     Groupnet     groupnet0     Authentication Providers     Local:System     Active Directory:AD1.TEST     Local:System | r    |            |            |        |          |           |
| Close  |      |            |            |        | Edit     |           |
|  |      |            |            |        |          |           |

1. Set the HDFS root directory in eyeglass access zone that supports HDFS connections.

```
(Onefs 8.x)
    isi hdfs settings modify --root-
directory=path_to_hdfs_root_dir --
zone=access_zone_name_for_hdfs
    Example:
    isi hdfs settings modify --root-
directory=/ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb/ --
zone=eyeglass
```

1. Create **One** IP pool for HDFS access with at least 3 nodes in the pool to ensure high availability access to each ECA node, the Pool will be configured with round robin load balancing. This will be used for datanode and storage node access by the ECA cluster for the Analytics database.

Command:

```
(Onefs 8.0)
    isi network pools create
    groupnet0.subnet0.hdfspool --
    ranges=172.22.1.22-172.22.1.22 --ifaces
    1-4:10gige-1 --access-zone eyeglass --
    sc-dns-zone hdfs-mycluster.ad1.test --
    alloc-method static
```

| Required field  |   |   | Help 🕜 |
|---|---|---|--------|
|   |   |   |        |
|   |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Basic  |   |   |        |
| Zone Name   |   | _ |        |
| hdfsransomware.ad3.test   |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Service Subnet   |   |   |        |
| subnet0   | * |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced   |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin  |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin  |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin  |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin<br>IP Failover Policy<br>Round-robin<br>Rebalance Policy   |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin<br>IP Failover Policy<br>Round-robin<br>Rebalance Policy<br>Automatic                                |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin<br>IP Failover Policy<br>Round-robin<br>Rebalance Policy<br>Automatic<br>Allocation Method           |   |   |        |
| SmartConnect Advanced<br>Client Connection Balancing Policy<br>Round-robin<br>IP Failover Policy<br>Round-robin<br>Rebalance Policy<br>Automatic<br>Allocation Method<br>Static |   |   |        |

A virtual HDFS rack is a pool of nodes on the PowerScale cluster associated with a pool of Hadoop compute clients. To configure virtual HDFS racks on the PowerScale Cluster:

```
NOTE: The ip address range for client = the ip range
used the by the ECA cluster VM's.
      Command<sup>.</sup>
     (Onefs 8.0)
        isi hdfs racks create / hdfs rack name --
        zone=access zone name for hdfs --client-
        ip-ranges=ip address range for client --
        ip-pools=subnet:pool
        Example:
        isi hdfs racks create /hdfs-iglsrack0 --
        client-ip-ranges=172.22.1.18-172.22.1.20 -
        -ip-pools=subnet0:hdfspool --zone=eyeglass
        isi hdfs racks list --zone=eyeglass
                     Client IP Ranges
                                              ΙP
        Name
        Pools
```



1. Create local Hadoop user in the System access zone.

```
NOTE: User ID must be eyeglasshdfs.
Command:
```

```
(Onefs 8.0)
```

```
isi auth users create --name=eyeglasshdfs -
-provider=local --enabled=yes --zone=system
    Example:
    isi auth users create --name=eyeglasshdfs -
-provider=local --enabled=yes --password-
expires=no --zone=system
```

1.

- Login via SSH to the PowerScale cluster as the root user to change the ownership, permissions and block inherited permissions from parent folders on the HDFS path that will be used by Eyeglass ECA clusters.
  - 1.chown -R eyeglasshdfs:'Isilon
    Users' /ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb/
  - 2.chmod -R 755 /ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb/
  - 3. chmod -c +dacl protected /ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb
  - 4.NOTE: if using a cluster in compliance mode do not run the commands above and run the command below.

5.chmod 777 /ifs/data/igls/analyticsdb/

1. Analytics Cluster setup Complete.

Deployment, Installation and Configuration ECA

# Cluster (Required Step)

## OVA Install Prerequistes

| Configuration Item                                     | Notes  |
|--|--|
| see scaling section                                    | The OVA file will deploy 3 vm's. to build a 6 node cluster,<br>deploy the OVA twice and move the VM's into the first<br>Cluster object in vcenter. See instructions below to<br>correctly move VM's into a single vapp in vcenter. |
| vSphere 6.x or higher                                  |  |
| 1x ip address on the same subnet for each node         |  |
| Gateway  |  |
| Network Mask   |  |
| DNS IP   |  |
| NTP server IP  |  |
| IP Address of Eyeglass                                 |  |
| API token from Eyeglass                                |  |
| Unique cluster name (lower case no special characters) |  |

#### Installation Procedure of the ECA Vmware OVA

- 1. The deployment is based on three node ECA appliances.
- 2. Download the Superna Eyeglass<sup>™</sup> OVF from https://www.supernaeyeglass.com/downloads
- 3. Unzip into a directory on a machine with vSphere client installed
- 4. Install the OVA using steps below with **HTML vCenter web** interface.
  - a. WARNING: Access vCenter with an FQDN DNS name NOT an IP address, a bug in vCenter will generate an error during OVA validation.

- 5. NOTE: IF DEPLOYING A 6 OR 9 NODE CLUSTER FOR EASY AUDITOR THE 3 VM vAPP OVA STEPS BELOW WILL BE DOWN TWICE FOR 6 NODE AND THREE TIMES FOR 9 NODE CLUSTER. THIS WILL CREATE 2 OR 3 vAPP'S AND THE VM'S FROM EACH vAPP'S CAN BE MOVED INTO A SINGLE COMMON vAPP OBJECT IN VCENTER AND REMOVE THE EMPTY vAPP OBJECTS IN VCENTER
- 6. NOTE: The ECA name on the 2nd or 3rd vAPP deployment does not need to match the first vAPP ECA name. Once completed the ECA name used for the first ECA cluster will be synced to all VM's defined on node 1 ECA cluster master configuration file.
- 7. MANDATORY STEP: POWER ON THE VAPP AFTER DEPLOYMENT SO THAT IP ADDRESSES GET ASSIGNED. DO NOT REMOVE VM'S FROM VAPP BEFORE POWER ON.
  - Make sure the first boot steps completes by reviewing running this command and repeat on each ECA vm to ensure it has completed all first boot steps.
    - i. sudo systemctl status superna-on-boot (enter admin password and verify the first boot process completes)
    - ii. Verify the process has completed and exited the processing.
    - iii. cat /var/log/superna-on-boot.log, it must show done before the boot process is completed. Do not proceed until this steps finishes.

#### b. Procedures

- i. For the 2nd/3rd ECA OVA deployment power on the vapp
- ii. Ping each VM ip in the cluster until it responds to ping. (this allows first boot scripts to run)

- iii. Once the VM's ping you can move the VM's from the vApp to the 1st ECA vapp deployed, repeat for each VM and once done the empty vApp can be deleted.
  Drag and drop the VM from the vapp to the ECA 1 vapp.
- iv. Repeat for each ECA OVA deployed AFTER the first ECA OVA.

| 8  | File   | -developmer<br>Edit View<br>New<br>Deploy OVF<br>Export<br>Report<br>Print Maps<br>Exit           | Template                    | Admir   | perna.net<br>nistration<br>rentory<br>uperna.n<br>ucture.s      | et  |   |                                  |                           |      |  |
|----|--|---|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|----------------------------------|---------------------------|------|--|
| 0. | Deploy O Source Select Source OVF Temp Name and Host / Clu: Resource Disk Forma Ready to b | DVF Template<br>the source location<br>late Details<br>Location<br>ster<br>Pool<br>at<br>Complete | Dep<br>Ente<br>spec<br>netv | loy from a<br>r a URL to<br>ify a locat<br>vork share | file or URL<br>o download an<br>ion accessible<br>; or a CD/DVD | d install the O'<br>from your con<br>0 drive. | ECA<br>VF package from<br>mputer, such as | n the Internet<br>a local hard d | prowse<br>; or<br>rive, a |      |  |
|    |  |   |                             |   |   |   | < De                                      | No.                              | CAL >                     | Cano |  |

9. vCenter HTML Example



- 11. Deploy from a file or URL where the OVA was saved
- 12. Using vCenter client set required VM settings, for datastore, networking. NOTE: Leave setting as Fixed IP address
- 13. Complete the networking sections as follows:
  - a. ECA Cluster name (NOTE: must be lowercase < 8 characters and no special characters, with only letters)</li>
  - b. IMPORTANT: ECA Cluster name cannot include
     \_ as this will cause some services to fail
  - c. All VM are on the same subnet
  - d. Enter network mask (will be applied to all VM's)
  - e. Gateway IP

10

- f. DNS server (must be able to resolve the igls.<your domain name here>) (Use nameserver IP address)
- g. NOTE: Agent node 1 is the master node where all ECA CLI commands are executed for cluster management
- 14. vCenter Windows client example



#### b. vCenter HTML Client Example

| <ul> <li>1 Select an OVF template</li> <li>2 Select a name and folder</li> <li>3 Select a compute resource</li> <li>4 Review details</li> <li>5 Select storage</li> </ul> | ECA Cluster Name                              | A unique name for this ECA cluster. Must be al<br>lower-case with no underscores, special<br>characters, or spaces.<br> |
|---|---|---|
| ✓ 6 Select networks   | V Networking Properties                       | 6 settings  |
| 7 Customize template<br>8 Ready to complete   | eth0 Netmask                                  | The netmask for this interface.   |
|   | eth0 Default Gateway                          | The default gateway for this interface.   |
|   | ethO DNS                                      | List of DNS domain names and/or nameserver<br>(space separated).  |
|   | eth0 IP Address for<br>EyeglassClusterAgent 1 | The IP address for this interface.  |
|   | eth0 IP Address for<br>EyeglassClusterAgent 2 | The IP address for this interface.  |
|   | ethO IP Address for<br>EyeglassClusterAgent 3 | The IP address for this interface.  |
|   |   | CANCEL BACK   |

15.

|                        |   |             |                            |             |        | T Filter   |     |
|------------------------|---|-------------|----------------------------|-------------|--------|------------|-----|
| Name                   | ~ | State ~     | Status ~                   | Provision V | Us ~   | Host CPU 🔍 | - 1 |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 1 |   | Powered Off | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 96.69 GB    | 1.6 KB | 0 Hz       |     |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 2 |   | Powered Off | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 96.69 GB    | 1.6 KB | 0 Hz       |     |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 3 |   | Powered Off | ✓ Normal                   | 96.69 GB    | 7.91   | 0 Hz       |     |

- 16. OPTIONAL If you are deploying a 6 or 9 node ECA cluster repeat the deployment again following the instractions above and set the ip addresses on the new VM's to expand the overall cluster ip range to 6 or 9 VM's. The ECA name can be any value since this will be synced from node 1 of the first OVA cluster that was deployed.
  - a. After deployment of the 2nd or 3rd ECA, open the vAPP and rename the vm's as follows:
    - i. 6 or 9 Node ECA:
      - EyeglassClusteredAgent 1 to EyeglassClusteredAgen t 4
      - 2. EyeglassClusteredAgent 2 to

EyeglassClusteredAgent 5

3. EyeglassClusteredAgent 3 to

EyeglassClusteredAgent 6

- ONLY If a 9 node ECA cluster continue to rename the 3rd OVA VM's inside the vAPP
- EyeglassClusteredAgent 1 to EyeglassClusteredAgent 7
- EyeglassClusteredAgent 2 to

EyeglassClusteredAgent 8

7. EyeglassClusteredAgent 3 to

EyeglassClusteredAgent 9

- Now drag and drop the vm inside each of the vAPP's into the vAPP created for the first 3 VM's deployed.
- iii. Once completed you can delete the empty vAPP deployed for VM's 4-9.
- iv. Once done the initial vAPP will look like this (9 node ECA shown).

| Name                   | ~ | State ~    | Status ~                   | Provision v | Us V | Host CPU 🔷 | Host   |
|------------------------|---|------------|----------------------------|-------------|------|------------|--------|
| EyeglassClusterAgent 1 |   | Powered On | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.03 GHz   | 1.95 G |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 2 |   | Powered On | Normal                     | 495.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.05 GHz   | 2.07   |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 3 |   | Powered On | Normal                     | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1 GHz      | 176 0  |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 4 |   | Powered On | Normal                     | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.05 GHz   | 5.05   |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 5 |   | Powered On | ✓ Normal                   | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 975 MHz    | 176    |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 6 |   | Powered On | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.05 GHz   | 1.78   |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 7 |   | Powered On | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.05 GHz   | 1.95   |
| EyeglassClusterAgent 8 |   | Powered On | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1.05 GHz   | 173 (  |
| EveolassClusterAgent 9 |   | Powered On | <ul> <li>Normal</li> </ul> | 496.11 GB   | 23.5 | 1 GHz      | 1.85   |

vi. Done

#### 17. After Deployment is complete Power on the vAPP

- a. Ping each ip address to make sure each node has finished booting
- b. Login via SSH to the Master Node (Node 1) using the "ecaadmin" account default password 3y3gl4ss and run the following command:
- c. ecactl components configure-nodes (this command sets up keyless ssh for the ecaadmin user to manage the cluster)
- d. On Eyeglass Appliance: generate a unique API Token from Superna Eyeglass REST API Window. Once a token has been generated for the ECA Cluster, it can be used in that ECA's startup command for authentication.
- e. Login to Eyeglass goto main menu Eyeglass REST API menu item. Create a new API token. This will be used in the startup file for the ECA

cluster to authenticate to the Eyeglass VM and register ECA services.

| 🛒 Superna Eyegla   | ss REST API |   | = 2 ×     |
|--------------------|-------------|---|-----------|
| API Tokens         | Tokens      |   |           |
| API Explorer       | Name        | Token   | Revoke    |
| Embeddable Widgets | eca-cluster | igls-13qq67hjse66tic7km123bojqmr338dhi1g528s99480808glk05 | ×         |
| Ŭ                  |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             |   |           |
|                    |             | Create  | New Token |

#### 18. On ECA Cluster Master node ip 1

f

- Login to that VM using assh as the ecaadmin user default password 3y3gl4ss. From this point on, commands will only be executed on the master node.
- b. On the master node, edit the file nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf, and change these five settings to reflect your environment. Replace the variables accordingly.
- c. Set the IP address or FQDN of the Eyeglass appliance and the API Token (created above), uncomment the parameter lines before save file.
   l.e:
  - i. export EYEGLASS\_LOCATION=*ip\_addr\_of\_ey eglass\_appliance*
  - ii. export EYEGLASS\_API\_TOKEN=*Eyeglass\_AP I\_token*
- d. Verify the IP addresses for the nodes in your cluster. It is important that NODE\_1 be the master, (i.e. the IP address of the node you're currently logged into.)

- NOTE: add additional ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_X=x.x.x.x for additional node in the ECA cluster depending on ECA cluster size. All nodes in the cluster must be listed in the file. Copy a line and paste to add additional ECA nodes and make sure to change the node number example to add the 4th ECA VM it would like like this export ECA LOCATION NODE 4=
- ii. export ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_1=ip\_addr\_o f\_node\_1 (set by first boot from the OVF)
- iii. export ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_2=ip\_addr\_o f\_node\_2 (set by first boot from the OVF)
- iv. export

ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_3=*ip\_addr\_o f\_node\_3* (set by first boot from the OVF)

e. Set the HDFS path to the SmartConnect name setup in the Analytics database configuration steps. Replace the

FQDN *hdfs\_sc\_zone\_name* with <your smartconnect FQDN >.

- f. NOTE: Do not change any other value.
   Whatever is entered here is created as a subdirectory of the HDFS root directory that was set earlier.
- g. export ISILON\_HDFS\_ROOT='hdfs://hdfs\_sc\_zone\_name:80 20/ecal'
- 19. Done: Continue on to the Cluster Auditing Configuration Section

Time Configuration PowerScale, Eyeglass, ECA cluster (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender , Easy

Auditor, Performance Auditor)

**Overview:** To get accurate auditing features for Ransomware or Easy Auditor time sync between all components is critical step. NTP should be used on all VM's and use the same NTP source.

- Verify PowerScale clusters being monitored are using an NTP server. Many Internet time sources exist or internal Enterprise server IP address
- 2. Enable NTP on all PowerScale clusters
- 3. Eyeglass VM configure the same NTP servers used by PowerScale by following.
- 4. On each ECA VM repeat the YAST steps above to configure NTP on each VM.

If NTP and ESX host time sync conflict it may be necessary to disable ESX host time sync to the ECA nodes to allow ECA nodes to get NTP time versus esx host. This ensure that DB queries and each node has consistent time in sync across Eyeglass VM's and ECA nodes.

How to disable VMware vSphere ESXi host time sync

(Mandatory Step)

#### For ECA:

- 1. Initiate ecactl cluster down
- 2. Power down ECA vApp
- 3. Change VMware time sync configuration as below:
- 4. Click on Virtual Machine
- 5. Right click on ECA node1
- 6. Click Edit Settings..

- 7. Click on Option
- 8. Click VMware Tools
- 9. Uncheck 'Synchronize guest time with host'
- 10. Click OK
- 11. Power up vApp
- 12. Initiate ecactl cluster up





NOTE: Apply this change on ALL ECA nodes. Perform same steps for Eyeglass Appliance if needed

New changes may take up to 15 mins in some cases, you may need to restart ntpd after cluster up

How to Configure Audit Data Ingestion on the Isilon/Powerscale (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor) (Required Step)

## Prerequisites for Isilon/Powerscale Audit Data NFS Export

- 1. A Smartconnect name configured in the system zone for the NFS export created on /ifs/.ifsvar/audit/logs (steps below)
- Isilon/Powerscale IP pool set to dynamic mode for NFS mount used by the ECA cluster nodes for a highly available NFS mount.
   1.

Create a read-only NFS Export on the Isilon/PowerScale cluster(s) that will be managed

- 1. Note all managed clusters by this ECA cluster will require an export created for audit event processing
- In the example below replace <ECA\_IP\_1> with the IP address of ECA nodes 1, 2, 3, if a larger ECA cluster you MUST add all IP addresses in the ECA cluster to the NFS export root and client lists.
  - 1. isi nfs exports create /ifs/.ifsvar/audit/logs --rootclients="<ECA\_IP\_1>,<ECA\_IP\_2>,<ECA\_IP\_3>" --

clients="*<ECA\_IP\_1>,<ECA\_IP\_2>,<ECA\_IP\_3>*" -read-only=true -f --description "Easy Auditor Audit Log Export"

1.

Configure an NFS mount point on each ECA node to

Read Audit data from Isilon/PowerScale (Required)

- Audit events are ingested over NFS mounts on ECA nodes 1 X (where X is the size of your ECA cluster). Follow the steps below to add the export to each of the VM's.
- What you will need to complete this step on nodes 2 x (where x is the last node IP in the cluster):
  - a. Cluster GUID and cluster name for each cluster to be indexed
  - b. Cluster name as shown on top right corner after login to OneFS GUI NOTE: this name is case sensitive and the mount MUST match the case of the cluster name.
    - i. See example of where to get this information.

| <b>OneFS</b>  | STORAGE<br>ADMINISTRATION   |                           |               |                  |           |
|---|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------|
| Dashboard <del>-</del>  | Cluster mana                | gement 🗸                  | File sys      | tem <del>-</del> | Data      |
| General setting   | S                           |                           |               |                  |           |
| Cluster identity  | Email settings              | Date and time             | NTP           | SNMP mo          | onitoring |
| Edit cluster identit  | у                           |                           |               |                  |           |
| - Cluster identity  |                             |                           |               |                  |           |
| Cluster GUID<br>00505699ec55c64cf45                                   | id411e36ac285fff13          |                           |               |                  |           |
| Cluster name<br>If this cluster is joined to a<br>characters or fewer | an Active Directory domain, | you must limit the cluste | er name to 11 |                  |           |
|   |                             |                           |               |                  |           |

3. Login to ECA node 1

ii.

- a. ssh ecaadmin@x.x.x.x (where x.x.x.x is node 1 IP of the ECA cluster)
- 4. Create local mount directory and sync to all nodes
  - a. ecactl cluster exec "sudo mkdir -p

/opt/superna/mnt/audit/GUID/clusternamehere/"

- replace GUID and clusternamehere with correct values from above (note cluster name is case sensitive and must match the cluster name case as shown in Onefs)
- ii. enter the admin password when prompted on each ECA node
- b. Verify the folder exists on all ECA nodes
  - i. ecactl cluster exec " II `ls` /opt/superna/mnt/audit"
- 5. NFS Mount Setup with Centralized Mount file for all Nodes with Auto-Mount

- a. NOTE: This option will mount on cluster up using a centralized file to control the mount. This simplifies changing mounts on nodes and provides cluster up mount diagnostics.
- b. Configuration Steps for Auto mount
  - i. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
  - ii. add a variable to ensure the cluster up stops if the NFS mount fails copy this line and paste into the file export STOP\_ON\_AUTOMOUNT\_FAIL=true
  - iii. ssh to ECA node 1 as ecaadmin user to enable auto mount and make sure it starts on OS reboot. NOTE: for each node you will be prompted for the ecaadmin password.
  - iv. ecactl cluster exec "sudo systemctl unmask autofs"
  - v. ecactl cluster exec "sudo systemctl start autofs"
  - vi. Check and ensure the service is running
    - 1. ecactl cluster exec "sudo systemctl status autofs"
- c. Add new entry to auto.nfs file on ECA node 1
  - NOTE: the FQDN should be a smartconnect name for a pool in the System Access Zone IP Pool. <NAME> is the cluster name collected from the section above.
     GUID is the cluster GUID from the General settings screen of Onefs
  - ii. NOTE: Add 1 line for each Isilon/Powerscale cluster that will be monitored from this ECA cluster.

- iii. Fix the command below with correct values
   highlighted in yellow and paste into the SSH session.
   Repeat for each Isilon/Powerscale cluster mount
  - 1. echo -e

"\n/opt/superna/mnt/audit/<mark><GUID>/<NAME></mark> -fstype=nfs,nfsvers=3,ro,soft <FQDN>:/ifs/.ifsvar/ audit/logs" >> /opt/superna/eca/data/auditnfs/auto.nfs

- iv. Verify the auto.nfs file contents
  - 1. cat /opt/superna/eca/data/audit-nfs/auto.nfs
- d. Push the configuration to all ECA nodes
  - i. ecactl cluster push-config
- e. Start Auto mount and verify the mount
  - i. ecactl cluster exec "sudo systemctl restart autofs" (note you will be asked to enter the ecaadmin password for each ECA node)
  - ii. Check the mount by typing command below
    - 1. mount
- f. The cluster up command will read the mount file and mount on each ECA node during cluster up.

Start up the ECA Cluster (Required)

- 1. At this point you can start up the cluster
- 2. SSH to ECA node 1 as ecaadmin and run the command below.
- 3. ecactl cluster up (Note can take 5-8 minutes to complete)

4. See trouble shooting section below for commands to verify startup and post startup status.

Verify ECA Remote Monitoring Connection from the Eyeglass Appliance (Required Step) (Ransomware Defender , Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor)

- 1. Login to Eyeglass as admin user
- Check the status of the ECA Cluster, click 'Manage Service' Icon and click on + to expand the container or services for each eca node review image below.
- 3. Verify the ip addresses of the ECA nodes are listed.
- 4. Verify all cluster nodes show and all docker containers show green health.
- 5. NOTE: Hbase status can take 5 minutes to transition from warning to Green.

|   | State IP                   |                   | Name                                  |            | Port            | Service Type               |                 | Eyeglass Token                                   | Dele |
|---|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|--|------|
|   | active                     | 172.31.1.131      | demo                                  | eca_1      | 443             | eyeglass_cluste            | r_appliance     | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | >    |
|   | Compon                     | ent               | Health                                | Details    | CPU             | RAM                        | Web UI addre    | ss   |      |
|   | kafka-manager:2.5.3-18175  |                   | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.65%           | 348.34MiB                  | http://172.31.1 | .131:9000  |      |
|   | spark-history:2.5.3-18175  |                   | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.1%            | 419.81MiB                  | http://172.31.1 | .131:18080                                       |      |
|   | fluentd:2                  | .5.3-18175        | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.39%           | 62.56MiB                   |                 |  |      |
|   | zookeeper:2.5.3-18175      |                   | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.25%           | 225.22MiB                  |                 |  |      |
|   | hbase-master:2.5.3-18175   |                   | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.36%           | 473.66MiB                  | http://172.31.1 | .131:16010                                       |      |
|   | kafka:2.5                  | kafka:2.5.3-18175 |                                       | Up 5 hours | 4.48%           | 1344.53MiB                 |                 |  |      |
|   | solr:2.5.3                 | -18175            | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | nours 0.09%     | 319.75MiB <u>http:/</u>    | http://172.31.1 | .131:8983  |      |
|   | spark-ma                   | aster:2.5.3-18175 | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0.09%           | 431.17MiB                  | http://172.31.1 | .131:8080  |      |
|   | dns:2.5.3-18175            |                   | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 0%              | 5.92MiB                    |                 |  |      |
|   | iglssvc:2.                 | 5.3-18175         | 🔵 ОК                                  | Up 5 hours | 1.52%           | 360.14MiB                  |                 |  |      |
|   | Service Validation         |                   | s                                     | tatus Deta | ils             |                            |                 |  |      |
|   | hbase:server               |                   | 🔵 OK nullWed Jun 27 19:20:00 EDT 2018 |            |                 |                            |                 |  |      |
|   | time skew                  |                   |                                       | •          | р ок            |                            |                 |  |      |
| ٥ | <b>ACTIVE</b> 172.31.1.132 |                   | demoeca_2                             |            | 443             | eyeglass_cluster_appliance |                 | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu |      |
| ٠ | <b>ACTIVE</b> 172,31,1,133 |                   | demoeca 3                             |            | 443 eyeglass cl |                            | r_appliance     | igls-11llkok678afe9io314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×    |

How to Backup and Protect the Audit Database with

SnapshotIQ (Easy Auditor) (Required Step)

Use the PowerScale native SnapshotIQ feature to backup the audit data. Procedure documented here.

Installation Complete

At this point in the document, installation should be complete. Review the CLI guides for customizing different products.

Ransomware and Easy Auditor IGLS CLI command Reference

Additional configuration can be completed from the CLI to customize the default behavior.

- See Eyeglass CLI commands for Ransomware Defender and Easy Auditor
- See ECA CLI Commands

How to Upgrade the ECA cluster Software For Easy Auditor , Ransomware Defender and Performance Auditor

NOTE: Contact support first before upgrading the cluster for compatibility with the Eyeglass version. Both Eyeglass and ECA MUST be running the same version. NOTE: Upgrade assistance is scheduled and is a service not covered under 7/24 support. Please review the EULA terms and conditions.

NOTE: Always take a VM level snapshot before any upgrade steps to provide a roll back to the previous release

Steps to upgrade:

- Disable Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor functionality before beginning upgrade - required first step
  - a. Log in to ECA Node 1 using "ecaadmin" credentials.
  - b. Issue the following command: ecactl cluster down
  - c. Please wait for the procedure to complete on all involved ECA nodes.
  - d. Done!
- 2. Upgrade Eyeglass VM first and downlod the latest release from here https://www.supernaeyeglass.com/downloads
  - a. NOTE: Eyeglass and ECA cluster software must be upgraded to the same version.
  - b. Follow the guide here
  - c. Double check licenses are assigned to the correct clusters based on information here.
  - d. Double check Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor and Performance Auditor settings are correct and match the settings you had before the upgrade.

- 3. Then Downlod latest GA Release for the ECA upgrade following instructions here https://www.supernaeyeglass.com/downloads
- 4. Log in to ECA Node 1 using "ecaadmin" credentials.
- Note: ECA is in down state ecactl cluster down already done in step 1
- 6. Verify by executing command: ecactl cluster stats
- 7. No containers should be running
- 8. If containers running stop by executing the command and waiting for it to complete on all nodes: ecactl cluster down
- 9. Once the above steps are complete
  - a. Use WinSCP to transfer run file on node 1 (Master Node) in /home/ecaadmin directory
  - b. ssh to ECA node 1 as ecaadmin user example ssh ecaadmin@x.x.x.x
  - c. cd /home/ecaadmin
  - d. chmod +x ecaxxxxxx.run file (xxxx is name of file)
  - e. ./ecaxxxxx.run file (xxxx is name of file)
  - f. Enter password for ecaadmin when prompted
  - g. wait for installation to complete
  - h. Capture the upgrade text to provide to support if needed
- 10. Software upgrade is completed
- 11. Now bring up the ECA cluster
  - a. ecactl cluster up

- b. wait until all services are started on all nodes. If there are any errors copy the upgrade log referenced when the upgrade starts and use Winscp to copy the log file to your pc or copy and paste to a support case.
- 12. Once completed, login to Eyeglass open the managed services icon, verify all ECA nodes show green and online. If any services show warning or inactive wait at least 5 minutes, if the condition persists, open a support case.

| •         • |   | June     | IP           | Name      | Port | Service Type               | Eyeglass Token                                   | Delete |
|---|---|----------|--------------|-----------|------|----------------------------|--|--------|
| ACTIVE         172.31.1.136         demoeca_6         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu           ACTIVE         172.31.1.132         demoeca_2         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu           ACTIVE         172.31.1.133         demoeca_3         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu           ACTIVE         172.31.1.133         demoeca_4         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu           ACTIVE         172.31.1.134         demoeca_4         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu   | 0 | 🌄 WARNI  | 172.31.1.131 | demoeca_1 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |
| <ul></ul>   | 0 | ACTIVE   | 172.31.1.136 | demoeca_6 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |
| ACTIVE         172.31.1.133         demoeca_3         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu           ACTIVE         172.31.1.134         demoeca_4         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu   | 0 | 🚝 ACTIVE | 172.31.1.132 | demoeca_2 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |
| ACTIVE         172.31.1.134         demoeca_4         443         eyeglass_cluster_appliance         igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu   | ٥ | 🚟 ACTIVE | 172.31.1.133 | demoeca_3 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |
|   | ٥ | 🚝 ACTIVE | 172.31.1.134 | demoeca_4 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |
| 🚦 🚝 ACTIVE 172.31.1.135 demoeca_5 443 eyeglass_cluster_appliance igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu   | ٥ | ACTIVE   | 172.31.1.135 | demoeca_5 | 443  | eyeglass_cluster_appliance | igls-11llkok678afe9jo314931r1rdi40ib58r43bih3bsu | ×      |

- 13. If the above steps pass and all ECA nodes show green online
  - a. Then use the Security guard test in Ransomware Defender or run the RoboAudit feature run in Easy auditor, to validate audit data ingestion is functioning.
- 14. Consult the admin guide of each product to start a manual test of these features.

How to Migrate ECA cluster settings to a new ECA cluster deployment - To upgrade Open Suse OS.

To upgrade an ECA cluster OS, it is easier to migrate the settings to a new ECA cluster deployed with the new OS. Follow these steps to deploy a new ECA cluster and migrate configuration to the new ECA cluster.

## Prerequisites

- The ECA cluster has a logical name between the nodes, when deploying the new OVA the deployment promtps for the ECA cluster name and this should use the same name as the previous ECA cluster.
  - a. How to get the ECA cluster name
  - b. Login to eca node 1 via ssh ecaadmin@x.x.x.x and then run the command below:
  - c. cat /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf | grep ECA\_CLUSTER\_ID
  - d. Use the value returned after the = sign when deploying the new ECA cluster.
  - e. Using winscp utility copy the following files from ECA node 1 of the **existing** ECA cluster, login using ecaadmin user
    - i. /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
    - ii. /opt/superna/eca/docker-compose.overrides.yml
    - iii. /opt/superna/eca/conf/common/overrides/ThreatLevels .json
    - iv. /opt/superna/eca/data/audit-nfs/auto.nfs

- f. NOTE: This procedure assumes the IP addresses will stay the same so that the cluster NFS export does nont need to be changed and no impact to any firewall rules.
- Deploy a new OVA ECA cluster using the latest OS OVA by downloading from instructions here.
- 3. Follow deployment instructions in the install guide to deploy the new OVA and use the ECA cluster name captured from the prerequisites when prompted during the installation process of the OVA. The install guide for deploying the OVA is here.
  - a. NOTE: Use the same ip addresses as the current ECA cluster
- 4. Shutdown the old ECA cluster
  - a. Login to node 1 as ecaadmin
  - b. ecactl cluster down
  - c. wait for the shutdown to finish
  - d. Using vcenter UI power off the vapp
- 5. Startup new ECA cluster
  - a. Using vcenter UI power on the vapp
  - b. ping each ip address in the cluster until each VM responds.
     NOTE: Do not continue if you cannot ping each VM in the cluster.
  - c. Using winscp and login ecaadmin copy the files from the steps above into the new ECA OVA cluster
  - d. On node 1 replace these files with the backup copies
    - i. /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf

- ii. /opt/superna/eca/docker-compose.overrides.yml
- iii. /opt/superna/eca/conf/common/overrides/ThreatLevel s.json
- iv. /opt/superna/eca/data/audit-nfs/auto.nfs
- e. On Nodes 1 to node X (where x is the last node in the cluster)
  - i. On each node complete these steps
  - ii. ssh ecaadmin@x.x.x.x (ip of each eca node)
    - sudo -s (enter ecaadmin password when prompted)
    - mkdir -p /opt/superna/mnt/audit/cluster
       GUID/cluster name/
      - a. example
         only /opt/superna/mnt/audit/0050569960fc
         d70161594d21dd22a3c10cbe/prod-cluster 8
    - Repeat for each cluster managed by this ECA cluster. View the contents of this file to get the cluster GUID and

name /opt/superna/eca/data/audit-nfs/auto.nfs

- iii. Restart the Autofs process to read the auto.nfs file and mount all the clusters
  - 1. ecactl cluster exec "sudo systemctl restart autofs"
  - 2. Test the mount worked on each node

- 3. ecactl cluster exec "mount"
- 4. Verify the mount is present on all nodes in the output from the mount command.
- f. Startup the new ECA cluster
  - i. login to eca node 1 as ecaadmin
  - ii. ecactl cluster up
  - iii. review statup messages for errors.
- g. Done.

# Monitor Health and Performance of an ECA Cluster (Optional)

The sections below cover how to check the vitals of an ECA cluster. Always check with support before taking any actions. ECA clusters are designed to consume CPU for most operations and is expected to see high CPU on all nodes most of the time.

How to Verifying ECA Cluster Status

#### 1. On the master node run these commands:

- run the following command: ecactl db shell
- Once in the shell execute command: status
- Output should show 1 active master , 2 backup master server

ar-@ ecactl db shell 17-09-18 21:34:01,927 WARN [main] util.NativeCodeLoader: Unable to load native-hadoop library for your platform... using builtin-java classes are applicable see Shell; enter 'help<RETURN>' for list of supported commands. pe "exit<RETURN>" to leave the HBase Shell rsion 1.2.4, r67592f3de62743907f8c5ae00dbbelaedf69e5af, Tue Oct 25 18:10:20 CDT 2016 ase(main):001:0> status active master, 2 backup masters, 3 servers, 0 dead, 1.6667 average load

## How to Verify ECA containers are running
# 1. Command: "ecactl containers ps"

| <pre>leca:~ # ecactl containers ps executing: docker-compose -f Name</pre> | /opt/superna/eca/docker-compose.yml ps | C+3+a | Ports  |
|--|--|-------|--|
| Nallic   | Command                                |       | 10105  |
| db_node_1  | /usr/sbin/sshd -D                      | Up    | 0.0.0.0.156000->16000/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.15610->16000/tcp,<br>0.0.0.15610->16620/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.156030->16630/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.2181->>16330/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.2200->2180/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.2200->2280/tcp,<br>0.0.0.12383->2888/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.12383->3888/tcp,<br>0.0.0.0.0.000000000000000000000000000 |
| eca cee 1  | lemc cee exe                           | llo   | A A A 12228->12228/tcn   |
| eca ceefilter 1  | /hin/sh _c iava _iar ceefi             | llo   | 0.0.0.0.12220 (12220) (Cp  |
| eca fastanalysis 1   | /bin/sh -c java -jar fasta             | lin   |  |
| eca jølssvo 1  | /hin/sh -c java -jar jølss             | lin   |  |
| eca_rmq_1  | docker-entrypoint.sh /init.sh          | Ŭp    | 15672/tcp, 25672/tcp, 4369/tcp,<br>5671/tcp, 0.0.0.0:5672->5672/tcp  |
| eca:~ #  |  |       |  |

Check cluster status and that all analytics tables exist (Ransomware Defender, Easy Auditor, Performance Auditor) (Optional Step)

- Command: 'ecactl cluster status'
- This command verifies all containers are running on all nodes and verifies each node can mount the tables in the Analytics database.
- If any error conditions open a support case to resolve or retry with steps below:
- ecactl cluster down
- ecactl cluster up
- Send ECA cluster startup text to support

How to Check ECA node Container CPU and Memory Usage

(Optional)

- 1. Login to the eca node as ecaadmin
- 2. Type cli command to see real time view of container resources utilization
- 3. ecactl stats

How to Enable Real-time Monitor ECA cluster performance (If

```
directed by support)
```

Use this procedure to enable container monitor to determine if cpu GHZ are set correctly for query and writing to PowerScale performance.

- 1. To enable cadvisor, add the following line to eca-envcommon.conf:
- 2. export LAUNCH\_MONITORING=true
- 3. This will launch cadvisor on all cluster nodes.
- 4. If you want to launch it on a single node, login to that node and execute:
- 5. ecactl containers up -d cadvisor
- Once the cadvisor service is running, login to http://<IP OF ECA NODE>:9080 to see the web UI.
- 7. Done.

# ECA Cluster Modification Procedures (optional)

How to expand Easy Auditor cluster size

# NOTE: Support will determine if your installation requires expansion. Always contact support.

Follow this steps to add 3 or 6 more VM's for analytics performance increase for higher event rate or long running queries on a large database. Deploy the ECA OVA again, copy the new VM's into the vAPP, remove the vAPP created during the deployment. **NOTE: The** 

ECA name will not matter during the new OVA deployment since it will be synced from the existing ECA cluster during cluster up procedures.

- 1. Login to the master ECA node
- 2. ecactl cluster down
- 3. deploy one or two more eca clusters. No special config needs to be added on the newly deployed ECA OVA.
- 4. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf to add more nodes:
- 5. ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_4: <IP>
- 6. ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_5: >IP>
- 7. add anywhere from nodes 4 to 9 depending on the number of VM's added to the cluster.
- 8. ecactl components configure-nodes
- 9. ecactl cluster up
- 10. This will expand HBASE and Spark containers for faster read and analytics performance
- 11. Login to eyeglass and open managed services

| 栗 | ACTIVE .     | 112.22.15.150 | ecx30-h_3 | 443      | eyegiass_cluster_appliance            |  |
|---|--------------|---------------|-----------|----------|---------------------------------------|--|
|   | Component    |               |           | Health 8 | letalla                               |  |
|   | iphryc23.6-  | dev2016       |           | • OK 1   | ip 4 hours                            |  |
|   | dramatics.8  | 0-04-0818     |           | • CK 9   | ip 4 hears                            |  |
|   | sionanelysis | 28.0-6e/2016  |           | • OK •   | ap 4 hours                            |  |
|   | fuerel 2.00  | Hervoll 16    |           |          | ip 4 hours                            |  |
|   | htees2.604   | 6ev2816       |           | OK 1     | ip 4 hours                            |  |
|   | rabbitmg2.0  | 0.0 dev2016   |           | . CK 1   | ip 4 hours                            |  |
|   | Service Kalk | Gathers       |           | Status D | walk                                  |  |
|   | hbeseperver  |               |           | . OK 8   | eachable Fri Nev 10 14:00:80 EST 2017 |  |
|   | time skew    |               |           |          |                                       |  |

- 12. Now HBASE needs to balance the load across the cluster for improved read performance.
  - a. Now login to the Region Master vm typically node 1
  - http://x.x.x.x:16010/ verify that each region server (6 total) are visible in the UI
  - c. Verify each has assigned regions
  - d. Verify requests are visible to each region server
  - e. Verify tables section shows no regions offline, no regions in other column,

f. Example screenshots of 6 region servers with regions and normal looking table view

|   | Master ht  | )ase-ma  | ster.node1  | ecacluster  | .eca.local   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|---|--|---|---|--|--|---|--|--|---|
|   | Region Se  | rvers  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |
|   | Base Stats Mer   | aory Requ  | Jests Storefile   | s Compaction  | 5  |   |   | Start time   | Ve   | reion   | Paquarte Par Sacond  | Num Persions                                       |   |
|   | hbsee re podet er  | actuator or a  | local 16020 153   | 4143864063  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:17:44 UTC 2018   | 11   | 2.6   | 33   | 11   |   |
|   | hbase-rs node2 ec  | acluster.eca   | local 16020 152   | 4143868182  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:17:48 UTC 2018   | 12   | 2.6   | 84   | 10   |   |
|   | hbase-rs.node3.ec  | acluster.eca.  | local, 16020, 152   | 4143871594  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:17:51 UTC 2018   | 13   | 2.6   | 24   | 11   |   |
|   | hbase-rs.node4.ec  | acluster.eca.  | local, 16020, 152   | 4144073616  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:21:13 UTC 2018   | 1.3  | 2.6   | 47   | 10   |   |
|   | hbase-rs.node5.ec  | acluster.eca.  | local, 16020, 152   | 4144025240  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:20:25 UTC 2018   | 13   | 2.6   | 170  | 10   |   |
|   | hbase-rs.node6.ec  | acluster.eca.  | local, 16020, 152   | 4144021779  |  |   |   | Thu Apr 19 13:20:21 UTC 2018   | 13   | 2.6   | 8  | 10   |   |
|   | Total:6  |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   | 366  | 62   |   |
|   | Backup Ma  | asters   |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |
|   | ServerName   |  |   |   |  |   |   | Port   | Start Time   |   |  |  |   |
|   | hbase-master.nod   | e2.ecacluster  | r.eca.local   |   |  |   |   | 16000  | Thu Apr 19 1   | 13:17:49 UTC  | 2018   |  |   |
|   | hbase-master.node  | e3.ecacluster  | r.eca.local   |   |  |   |   | 16000  | Thu Apr 19 1   | 13:17:52 UTC  | 2018   |  |   |
| . | Tables   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |  | Ľ  | ż |
|   | User Tables  | System   | Tables Si   | napshots  |  |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set.   | [Details]  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set.   | (Details)<br>Table<br>Name   | Online<br>Regions   | Offline<br>Regions                                    | Failed<br>Regions  | Split<br>Regions                                    | Other<br>Regions  | Description  |  |   |  |  |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default   | [Details]<br>Table<br>Name<br>direvt   | Online<br>Regions   | Offline<br>Regions                                    | Failed<br>Regions  | Split<br>Regions<br>4                               | Other<br>Regions  | Description 'direvt', {NAME => 'evt', COM  | PRESSION => '  | LZ4'}   |  |  |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default default   | [Details]<br>Table<br>Name<br>direvt<br>inv                                      | Online<br>Regions<br>6<br>1   | Offline<br>Regions<br>0<br>0                          | Failed<br>Regions<br>0   | Split<br>Regions<br>4<br>0                          | Other<br>Regions<br>0<br>0  | Description<br>'direvt', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'inv', {NAME => 'data', COMP   | PRESSION => 'G<br>RESSION => 'G  | LZ4'}<br>Z'}, {NAMI   | E => 'info', COMPRESSION => '0   | 5Z'}   |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default default default                                 | [Details]<br>Table<br>Name<br>direvt<br>inv<br>report                            | Online<br>Regions<br>6<br>1<br>4  | Offline<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0                     | Failed<br>Regions<br>0<br>0  | Split<br>Regions<br>4<br>0<br>0                     | Other<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0   | Description<br>'direvt', (NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'inv', (NAME => 'data', COMP<br>'report', (NAME => 'data', CO  | PRESSION => '<br>RESSION => 'G<br>MPRESSION =>   | LZ4'}<br>3Z'}, {NAMI<br>> 'LZ4'}, {N  | E => 'info', COMPRESSION => '(<br>AME => 'info', COMPRESSION =   | 3Z'}<br>>> 'LZ4'}                                  |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default default default default                         | [Details]<br>Table<br>Name<br>direvt<br>inv<br>report<br>signal                  | Online<br>Regions<br>6<br>1<br>4<br>1   | Offline<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0                | Failed<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0  | Split<br>Regions<br>4<br>0<br>0<br>0                | Other<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0   | Description<br>'direvt', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'inv', {NAME => 'data', COMP<br>'report', {NAME => 'data', CO<br>'signal', {NAME => 'evt', COM   | PRESSION => 'G<br>RESSION => 'G<br>MPRESSION =><br>PRESSION => '   | LZ4'}<br>5Z'}, {NAMI<br>> 'LZ4'}, {N  | E => 'info', COMPRESSION => '0<br>AME => 'info', COMPRESSION =><br>ME => 'info', COMPRESSION =>  | 3Z'}<br>-> 'LZ4'}<br>-'LZ4'}                       |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default default default default default default         | [Details] Table Name direvt inv report signal stats                              | Online<br>Regions<br>6<br>1<br>4<br>1<br>1<br>1   | Offline<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0           | Failed<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0   | Split<br>Regions<br>4<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0      | Other<br>Regions0000000   | Description<br>'direvt', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'inv', {NAME => 'data', COMP<br>'report', {NAME => 'data', CO<br>'signal', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'stata', (NAME => 'info', COM  | PRESSION => '<br>RESSION => 'G<br>MPRESSION =><br>PRESSION => '<br>PRESSION => '                                     | LZ4'}<br>\$Z'}, {NAMI<br>> 'LZ4'}, {N<br>'LZ4'}, {NA<br>LZ4'}                           | E => 'info', COMPRESSION => '0<br>AME => 'info', COMPRESSION =<br>ME => 'info', COMPRESSION =>   | 3Z'}<br>⇒ 'LZ4'}<br>'LZ4'}                         |   |
|   | 6 table(s) in set. Namespace default default default default default default default | [Details]<br>Table<br>Name<br>direvt<br>inv<br>report<br>signal<br>stats<br>user | Online           Regions           6           1           4           1           1           1375 | Offline<br>Regions<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0 | Failed           Regions           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0 | Split<br>Regions<br>4<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0<br>0 | Other           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0           0 | Description<br>'direvt', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'inv', {NAME => 'data', COMP<br>'report', {NAME => 'data', CO<br>'signal', {NAME => 'evt', COM<br>'stats', {NAME => 'evt', TL<br>'user', {NAME => 'evt', TL<br>=> '2592000 SECONDS (30 D | PRESSION => 'G<br>RESSION => 'G<br>MPRESSION =><br>PRESSION => '<br>PRESSION => '<br>- '2592000 SEC<br>AYS)', COMPRE | LZ4'}<br>;; {NAMI<br>; 'LZ4'}, {N<br>'LZ4'}<br>(NA<br>LZ4'}<br>ONDS (30<br>;;;)ONDS (30 | E => 'info', COMPRESSION => '(<br>AME => 'info', COMPRESSION =><br>ME => 'info', COMPRESSION =><br>DAYS)', COMPRESSION => 'LZ4<br>'LZ4'} | 3Z')<br>> 'LZ4'}<br>'LZ4'}<br>'}, (NAME => 'info', | Π |

# Advanced Configurations (Optional)

How to Configure a Ransomware Defender Only

Configuration (Skip if running multiple products)

Make this change before starting up the cluster to ensure docker containers that are not required are auto disabled on startup.

- 1. Login to node 1 over ssh as ecaadmin
- 2. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
- 3. add a variable

- a. export RSW\_ONLY\_CFG=true
- 4. :wq (to save the file)
- 5. Continue with startup steps below

© Superna LLC

# 6.1. Eyeglass Clustered Agent ECA Hyper-V Installation Guide

Home Top

- Read first
- Create ECA Hyper-V Virtual Machine
- Configure ECA data disk
- Configuration of ECA cluster

Read first

- 1. ECA appliance uses 2 disks. 1 for OS and 1 for data
- 2. OS disk requires 20 GB [default disk]
- 3. Data disk requires 80 GB [read below on how to create]
- 4. ECA install and upgrade GUIDE HERE
- 5. ECA admin guide HERE

Create ECA Hyper-V Virtual Machine

- 1. Download ECA Hyper-V vhdx file from https://support.superna.net portal
- 2. Deploy a new `Virtual Machine`



#### 3. Enter `Name` for the VM



#### 4. Check `Generation 1`

| 💆 New Virtual Machine Wiza   | rd ×  |
|--|---|
| Specify Gene   | eration   |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | <ul> <li>Choose the generation of this virtual machine.</li> <li>Generation 1 This virtual machine generation supports 32-bit and 64-bit guest operating systems and provides virtual hardware which has been available in all previous versions of Hyper-V. Generation 2 This virtual machine generation provides support for newer virtualization features, has UEFI-based firmware, and requires a supported 64-bit guest operating system. Ince a virtual machine has been created, you cannot change its generation.</li></ul> |
|  | More about virtual machine generation support   |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

# 5. Startup memory **16384 MB [16 GB]**

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wizard   | 4 ×   |
|--|---|
| 💶 🛛 Assign Memo  | ry  |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | Specify the amount of memory to allocate to this virtual machine. You can specify an amount from 32 MB through 12582912 MB. To improve performance, specify more than the minimum amount recommended for the operating system.<br>Startup memory: 16384 MB<br>Use Dynamic Memory for this virtual machine.<br>When you decide how much memory to assign to a virtual machine, consider how you intend to use the virtual machine and the operating system that it will run. |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

# 6. Select `Network Adapter`

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wizar  | d ×  |
|--|--|
| Configure Ne   | etworking  |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | Each new virtual machine includes a network adapter. You can configure the network adapter to use a virtual switch, or it can remain disconnected.         Connection:       Intel(R) 82574L Gigabit Network Connection - Virtual Switch         Not Connected       Intel(R) 82574L Gigabit Network Connection - Virtual Switch |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel  |

7. Use an existing `Virtual Hard disk`  $\rightarrow$  Browse to newly downloaded ECA `vhdx` file

| New Virtual Machine Wiza   | rd  | × |
|--|---|---|
| 💴 Connect Vir  | tual Hard Disk  |   |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Summary | A virtual machine requires storage so that you can install an operating system. You can specify the storage now or configure it later by modifying the virtual machine's properties. O Create a virtual hard disk Use this option to create a VHDX dynamically expanding virtual hard disk. Name: ECA_node_1.vhdx Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks\ Browse Size: 127 GB (Maximum: 64 TB) O Use an existing virtual hard disk Use this option to attach an existing virtual hard disk, either VHD or VHDX format. Location: \Verticate{Vhaled\eca256\Superna_ECA.2.5.6-200644p15\star{1.x86_64_1.vhdx} Browse O Attach a virtual hard disk later Use this option to skip this step now and attach an existing virtual hard disk later. |   |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |   |

# 8. Complete the Wizard

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wiza  | rd )  |
|---|---|
| Completing  | the New Virtual Machine Wizard  |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation           | You have successfully completed the New Virtual Machine Wizard. You are about to create the following virtual machine. Description:   |
| Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Summary | Name:       ECA_node_1         Generation:       Generation 1         Memory:       16384 MB         Network:       Intel(R) 82574L Gigabit Network Connection - Virtual Switch         Hard Disk:       C:\Users\Administrator\Downloads\khaled\eca256\Superna_ECA.2.5.6-20064-lp15.1.x8   |
|   | Control Con |
|   | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

Configure ECA data disk

1. After deploying, go to the new VM  $\rightarrow$  Right Click  $\rightarrow$  Settings

| Virtual Machin | nes      |       |        |
|----------------|----------|-------|--------|
| Name           | ^        | State | CPU Us |
| Eveglass       |          | Off   |        |
|                | Connect  |       |        |
|                | Settings |       |        |

**2**. From `IDE Controller 0`  $\rightarrow$  Add a `Hard Drive`



#### 3. Create New

| Settings for Eyeglass on WNHV-RD   | 30-01   | -  |           | ×      |
|--|---|--|-----------|--------|
| Eyeglass   | <b>ن</b> ⊲ ► ∨  |  |           |        |
| <ul> <li>★ Hardware</li> <li>▲ Add Hardware</li> <li>■ BIOS<br/>Boot from CD</li> <li>◆ Security<br/>Key Storage Drive disabled</li> <li>■ Memory<br/>16384 MB</li> <li>● Processor</li> <li>1 Virtual processor</li> <li>■ IDE Controller 0</li> <li>● ■ Hard Drive<br/>Superna_Eyeglass.2.5.6-2</li> <li>● ■ Hard Drive<br/><file> ●</file></li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Ard Drive</li> <li>You can change how this virtual hard disk is attached to to operating system is installed on this disk, changing the attivitual machine from starting.</li> <li>Controller:</li> <li>Location:</li> <li>IDE Controller 0</li> <li>1 (in use)</li> <li>Media</li> <li>You can compact, convert, expand, merge, reconnect by editing the associated file. Specify the full path to the social disk:</li> <li>Virtual hard disk:</li> <li>New</li> </ul> | he virtual machine<br>tachment might pre<br>or shrink a virtual<br>he file.<br>Inspect | hard disk | ×<br>] |

#### 4. Choose Disk Format $\rightarrow$ `VHDX`



5. Choose Disk Type  $\rightarrow$  `Fixed size`



#### 6. Name the data disk

| 💄 New Virtual Hard Disk Wizi   | ard  | ×      |
|--|--|--------|
| 🚢 Specify Nam  | e and Location   |        |
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk<br>Summary | Specify the name and location of the virtual hard disk file.<br>Name: Eyeglass-Data-Disk.vhdx<br>Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks\ | Browse |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish   | Cancel |

7. Create a new blank virtual hard disk : 80 GB

| Logical Hard Disk Wi  | zard  | ×                     |
|---|---|-----------------------|
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk | You can create a blank virtual hard disk or copy the contents of an ex<br>Create a new blank virtual hard disk<br>Size: 80 GB (Maximum: 64 TB)<br>Copy the contents of the specified physical disk: | isting physical disk. |
| Summary   | Physical Hard Disk  (), PHYSICALDRIVE0  Conv. the contents of the specified virtual bard disk   | Size<br>278 GB        |
|   | Path:   | Browse                |

#### 8. Complete the data disk Wizard

| Leve Virtual Hard Disk Wiz   | ard   | × |
|--|---|---|
| Letter Completing  | the New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard  |   |
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk<br>Summary | You have successfully completed the New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard. You are about to create the following virtual hard disk. Description: Format: VHDX Type: fixed size Name: Eyeglass-Data-Disk.vhdx Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks Size: 80 GB To create the virtual hard disk and close this wizard, click Finish. |   |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |   |

#### Configuration of ECA cluster

SSH username: ecadmin SSH password: 3y3gl4ss

**1**. Power up the VM and wait 5-10 minutes to allow Superna on-boot script to run. tail the superna-on-boot.log and wait for it to finish. Then follow the on-screen instruction

tail -2 /var/log/superna-on-boot.log

```
ecaadmin@linux-gtdr:~> tail -2 /var/log/superna-on-boot.log
Please execute `sudo -Ei spy-hyperv-setup` before attempting to start the application.
```

**2**. Run the command to setup your ECA Hyper-V node 1

sudo spy-hyperv-setup

When prompted, enter `admin` user password [default password is: 3y3gl4ss] and enter IP, Netmask, Gateway, Hostname, DNS, NTP info

ecaadmin@linux-gtdr:~> sudo -Ei spy-hyperv-setup Please provide the required information when prompted. P address: 112 21 5 11 letmask: 255.255.255.0 teway: 172.25.5.1 Setting up networking ... Virtual Ethernet Card 0 MAC : 00:15:50:40:34:66 BusID : 6ff71c44-8dbb-4e75-8c6e-bfdb50f345e2 Device Name: eth0 Started automatically at boot IP address: 172 25.41, subnet mask 255.255.255.0 ostname: eca-1 Search Domains: ad1.test Servers: 172.16.80.6 Servers: 0.ca.pool.ntp.org Setting search domains ... Setting name servers ... Setting variable 'NETCONFIG\_DNS\_STATIC\_SERVERS' to '1777.36.88.6': Success Setting NTP Servers

3. **[STOP: go to STEP#4 and STEP#5]** Node 1 is the ECA Master node. **Do not press `y` until node 2-N prompts are marked as** 

**`n`.** Go to the next step.



- **4.** Repeat STEP#1 and STEP#2 on node 2-N nodes where 'N' is the number of nodes you want to deploy for ECA
- 5. **[IMPORTANT]** On Node 2-N, when prompted for `master` node, Enter `n`

Restarting network service ... Running startup steps ... eca-hyperv ... Will this node be the master? (y/N): n If not in progress already, please run Hyper-V setup on the master node. Waiting for node communication keys from the master node...

6. **[IMPORTANT]** Go to ECA Master node 1 and press `y` to complete the master node setup

- Enter ECA cluster name. Keep it simple.No Uppercase, no underscore, no special characters allowed.

- Enter child nodes IP [space separated]



When all done - you will see setup complete message [ check all nodes ]



© Superna LLC

# 6.2. Mini-ECA Installation and Configuration to Enable Distributed Cluster Mode

Home Top

- Overview
- Requirements
- Firewall for Mini ECA
- Network Impact Calculation
- Deployment Diagram
  - How to Deploy Mini-ECA VM's
  - How to Configure Mini-ECA nodes to Join Central ECA cluster
  - How to configure NFS mount on Mini-ECA

# Overview

New in release 2.5.5 is mini-eca deployment mode that enables centralized security processing of cluster audit data. This reduces the cost and simplifies deployments with a large central analytics and database ECA cluster and distributed single VM or VM pairs at remote locations that collect audit data locally and forward to the central cluster for processing.

# Requirements

- The latency between the main ECA cluster and the remote mini ECA's must be below a ping time of 80 ms. Anything over this may not be supported.
- 2. The FSTAB method of mounting the cluster audit folder is required (see instructions below)

| Port  | Direction   | Comments |
|---|---|----------|
| 22 ssh  | ECA main cluster <-> mini eca<br>admin pc> mini ECA |          |
| 2181, 2888 TCP                                      | ECA main cluster <-> mini eca                       |          |
| 9092 , 9090 TCP                                     | ECA main cluster <-> mini eca                       |          |
| 5514 (TCP) as of 2.5.6 build 84                     | mini ECA> Eyeglass                                  |          |
| 443 (TCP)   | mini ECA> Eyeglass<br>admin pc> mini eca            |          |
| NFS (UDP & TCP) version 3                           | mini ECA> cluster                                   |          |
| NTP (UDP) 123                                       | mini ECA> NTP server                                |          |
| DNS UDP 53  | mini ECA> DNS server                                |          |
| TCP port 5000 for node 1 ECA (during upgrades only) | all ECA and mini ECA> node 1<br>main ECA cluster IP |          |

# Firewall for Mini ECA

# Network Impact Calculation

- 1. To Calculate the bandwidth requriement requires knowing the audit event rate for the cluster.
- 2. To get the audit event rate run this command to get disk operations average per PowerScale node
  - a. isi statistics query current --nodes=all -stats=node.disk.xfers.rate.sum
  - b. This command returns the average per node at the bottom of the results. Use this value in the calcuation below.
  - c. Take the average per node and multiple by the number of nodes.
    - i. example 2200 (average as reported with command above) \* 7 (nodes) = 15,400. Divide this number by 1.83415365 (ratio of audit events to disk transfers). 15,400 / 1.83415365 = 8396 events per second
    - ii.
  - Now use the calculation below to compute the network bandwith required to on average to forward events to the central site for processing.
- 3. 5 Mbps of network traffic @ 1000 events/sec example 8396
  events/sec ÷ 1000 \* 5 Mbps = 40 Mbps

Deployment Diagram



How to Deploy Mini-ECA VM's

- 1. Deploy the OVA as normal following ECA OVA deployment instructions
- Delete ECA node 2 and 3 for a single Mini-ECA deployment (NOTE: mini-ECA does support HA configurations and can operate with ECA nodes 1 and 2, this would require only node 3 is deleted from the vApp)
- 3. Done

How to Configure Mini-ECA nodes to Join Central ECA cluster

- 1. Login to ECA Central node 1 as ecaadmin
- 2. vim /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf

3. Add additional ECA nodes , add a line for each mini-ECA at each remote site and increase the node ID for each new line

a. export ECA\_LOCATION\_NODE\_7=x.x.x.x

- 4. run 'ecactl components configure-nodes' to add mini for passwordless ssh
- 5. vi /opt/superna/eca/data/common/neOverrides.json to add clusters for specific nodes copy the text below and edit based on your configuration and then save the file with :wq
  - a. replace cluster name below in yellow with the mini-ECA cluster name, replace the nodes mapping to align the cluster name at a remote site to the ECA node ID configured in the eca-env-common.conf file in the step above.
  - b. NOTE: This mapping must be done correctly to ensure events are processed for the correct cluster and tagged correctly.
  - c. NOTE: the example file below lists 2 clusters, you will need an entry for each mini-ECA that is deployed.
  - d. NOTE: the nodes section is identifying ECA node identifier configured in the eca-env-common.conf
  - e. NOTE: only a single node should be listed if only 1 mini-ECA is used, the example below shows a 2 node mini-ECA and a single node mini-ECA

[{ "name": "<mark>SC-8100A</mark>", "nodes": ["<mark>2</mark>", "<mark>3</mark>"] }, { "name": "<mark>SC-8100B</mark>", "nodes": ["<mark>7</mark>"] }]

- 6. Now configure services on the mini-ECA nodes by using the overrides file to specify mini-ECA nodes using the template
- 7. cp /opt/superna/eca/templates/docker-compose.mini\_7\_8\_9.yml /opt/superna/eca/docker-compose.overrides.yml
  - f. NOTE: This file configures any mini-ECA with the correct services automatically for mini-ECA nodes 7-9 if they exist, no additional configuration is required.

How to configure NFS mount on Mini-ECA

Each mini ECA will need to mount the cluster it has been assigned.

- 1. The steps to create the export are the same as this section here.
- 2. The steps to add to /ets/fstab are the same as this section here.
- 3. Done.

How to verify the configuration

- 1. Startup the cluster will start up on all nodes
- 2. ecactl cluster up
- 3. verify any start up issues on all nodes
- 4. Generate test events on each cluster
- 5. Use wiretap feature to view these events

© Superna LLC

# 7. Eyeglass Clustered Agent vApp Install Guide (Ransomware Defender for ECS)

Home Top

- Overview
- ECA Cluster Sizing and Performance Considerations
- Firewall Requirements
- ECS Setup Steps
- ECA Setup Steps

# Overview

This guide covers installation of the ECA VM's to protect Dell ECS storage. A unified Isilon/Powerscale and Dell ECS installation is also possible. This guide covers unified and standalone deployment. The ECS to ECA forwarding supports Active passive processing with HA and backup ECA VM processing.

This guide should be followed after ECA deployed for Isilon or Powerscale or if deploying ECA nodes for ECS only.

ECA Cluster Sizing and Performance Considerations

1. A single 3 VM ECA cluster can protect up to 4 ECS clusters

# Firewall Requirements

NOTE: All other ECA Ransomware Defender ports are required in addition to the ports below.

| Port              | Direction                      | Comments   |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| rsyslog TCP 514   | ECS> ECA VM's (all<br>6 VM's)  | Each ECS node<br>requires these ports<br>open                  |
| HTTPS TCP 443 TCP | Eyeglass> ECS<br>management IP | needed for API access<br>from Eyeglass to<br>managed ECS nodes |

# ECS Setup Steps

This procedure must be replicated on each ECS node

- Create an rsyslog file at /etc/rsyslog.d/push-dataheadsvcaccess-log.conf following the example below with the following edits:
  - a. two instances of Target="ip\_address" with the IP address of your ECA nodes 2 and 3 respectively (yellow highlight).
    The first line (node 2) will be the active listener. The second line will take over if the first ECA VM is down.
  - Tag="vdc1" will need to be updated if you change the name of your VDC

#\$DebugFile /home/admin/rsyslog.debug

#\$DebugLevel 2

```
module(load="imfile" PollingInterval="1") #needs to be done just once
ruleset(name="ecsaccesslogs") {
```

```
action(type="omfwd" Target="172.25.1.6" Port="514" Protocol="tcp")
action(type="omfwd" Target="172.25.1.7" Port="514" Protocol="tcp"
action.execOnlyWhenPreviousIsSuspended="on")
stop
}
input(type="imfile" ruleset="ecsaccesslogs"
File="/var/log/vipr/emcvipr-object/dataheadsvc-access.log"
Tag="vdc1"
Severity="info"
Facility="local7"
```

```
StateFile="ecstosyslog")
```

- 1. Restart the rsyslog process for the changes to take effect
  - a. sudo systemctl restart rsyslog
- NOTE Mandatory: Repeat the above rsyslog configuration on each ECS node in the ECS cluster.

# ECA Setup Steps

- 1. ECS forwards syslog messages to the ECA VM's running syslog
- 2. Make sure the tuboaudit syslog server is enabled in eca-envcommon.conf before cluster up:
- 3. Login to eca node 1
- 4. nano /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-common.conf
  - a. Add variable below line to the file

- b. export TURBOAUDIT\_ECS\_SERVER\_ENABLED=true
- c. control+x and yes to save
- 5. If the cluster is running shutdown and restart
  - a. ecactl cluster down
  - b. ecactl cluster up
- 6. done.
- 7. Complete Licensing and remaining configuration following the guide here.

© Superna LLC

# 8. Eyeglass Hyper-V Installation Guide

Home Top

- Tested on
- Important Read
- Create Eyeglass Hyper-V Virtual Machine
- Configure Eyeglass data disk
- Configuration of Eyeglass

#### Tested on



#### Important Read

- 1. Eyeglass appliance uses 2 disks. 1 for OS and 1 for data
- 2. OS disk requires 20 GB [default disk]
- **3**. Data disk requires 80 GB [read below on how to create]

#### Create Eyeglass Hyper-V Virtual Machine

- 1. Download vhdx from https://support.superna.net portal
- 2. Deploy a new 'Virtual Machine'



#### 3. Enter `Name` for the VM



#### 4. Check `Generation 1`

| 💻 New Virtual Machine Wiza   | rd ×  |
|--|---|
| Specify Gene   | eration   |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | <ul> <li>Choose the generation of this virtual machine.</li> <li> (e) Generation 1  This virtual machine generation supports 32-bit and 64-bit guest operating systems and provides virtual hardware which has been available in all previous versions of Hyper-V. (c) Generation 2 This virtual machine generation provides support for newer virtualization features, has UEFI-based firmware, and requires a supported 64-bit guest operating system. (c) Once a virtual machine has been created, you cannot change its generation.</li></ul> |
|  | More about virtual machine generation support   |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

# 5. Startup memory 16384 MB [16 GB]

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wiza   | rd >  |
|--|---|
| Sign Memo  | DIY   |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | Specify the amount of memory to allocate to this virtual machine. You can specify an amount from 32 MB through 12582912 MB. To improve performance, specify more than the minimum amount recommended for the operating system.<br>Startup memory: 16384 MB<br>Use Dynamic Memory for this virtual machine.<br>When you decide how much memory to assign to a virtual machine, consider how you intend to use the virtual machine and the operating system that it will run. |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

# 6. Select `Network Adapter`

| New Virtual Machine Wizar Configure Net  | d ×   |
|--|---|
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Installation Options<br>Summary | Each new virtual machine includes a network adapter. You can configure the network adapter to use a virtual switch, or it can remain disconnected.<br>Connection: Intel(R) 82574L Gigabit Network Connection - Virtual Switch ~ |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

 Use an existing `Virtual Hard disk` → Browse to newly downloaded Eyeglass `vhdx` file

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wizi  | ard ×   |
|---|---|
| Connect Vir   | tual Hard Disk  |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation           | A virtual machine requires storage so that you can install an operating system. You can specify the storage now or configure it later by modifying the virtual machine's properties.  C Create a virtual hard disk Use this option to create a VHDX dynamically expanding virtual bard disk |
| Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Summary | Name:       Eyeglass.vhdx         Location:       C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks\         Size:       127       GB (Maximum: 64 TB)   |
|   | Use an existing virtual hard disk     Use this option to attach an existing virtual hard disk, either VHD or VHDX format.     Location: vr\Downloads\Superna_Eyeglass.2.5.6-20056-lp15.1.x86_64.vhdx      Browse  |
|   | <ul> <li>Attach a virtual hard disk later</li> <li>Use this option to skip this step now and attach an existing virtual hard disk later.</li> </ul>   |
|   | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel   |

# 8. Complete the Wizard

| 🖳 New Virtual Machine Wiza   | rd ×   |
|--|--|
| Completing   | the New Virtual Machine Wizard   |
| Before You Begin<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Specify Generation<br>Assign Memory<br>Configure Networking<br>Connect Virtual Hard Disk<br>Summary | You have successfully completed the New Virtual Machine Wizard. You are about to create the following virtual machine. Description:          Name:       Eyeglass         Generation:       Generation 1         Memory:       16384 MB         Network:       Intel(R) 82574L Gigabit Network Connection - Virtual Switch         Hard Disk:       C:\Users\Administrator\Downloads\Superna_Eyeglass.2.5.6-20056-lp15.1.x86_64.vhd;         Image: Supernal Content of the wizard, dick Finish. |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel  |

# Configure Eyeglass data disk

1. After deploying, go to the new VM  $\rightarrow$  Right Click  $\rightarrow$  Settings



2. From `IDE Controller o`  $\rightarrow$  Add a `Hard Drive`

| 0  | Settings for Eyeglass on WNHV-R                             | 630-01 |   | -                 |      | × |
|----|---|--------|---|-------------------|------|---|
| Ey | eglass  | ~      | <b>3</b>   <b>4</b> ⊳   |                   |      |   |
| *  | Hardware  | ^      | IDE Controller  |                   |      |   |
|    | BIOS<br>Boot from CD  |        | You can add hard drives and CD/DVD drives to your IDE controller<br>Select the type of drive you want to attach to the controller and | r.<br>then dick A | Add. |   |
|    | <ul> <li>Security<br/>Key Storage Drive disabled</li> </ul> |        | Hard Drive 2 DVD Drive  |                   |      |   |
|    | Memory<br>16384 MB  |        |   |                   |      |   |
| ŧ  | Processor     1 Virtual processor                           |        |   | 3                 |      |   |
| •  | IDE Controller 0  Hard Drive                                |        |   |                   | Add  |   |

#### 3. Create New

| yeglass  | ~             | ⊴ ⊨  Ö   |  |  |                                   |
|--|---------------|--|--|--|-----------------------------------|
| Add Hardware<br>Add Hardware<br>BIOS<br>Boot from CD<br>Security<br>Key Storage Dri                  | ▲ ve disabled | You can change how this vir<br>operating system is installed<br>virtual machine from starting<br>Controller: | tual hard disk is a<br>on this disk, cha<br>J. | nttached to the virtual m<br>nging the attachment m<br>Location: | achine. If an<br>ight prevent the |
| Memory<br>16384 MB<br>Processor<br>1 Virtual process<br>IDE Controller 0<br>Hard Drive<br>Superna Ev | sor           | Media<br>You can compact, conver<br>by editing the associated<br>Virtual hard disk:                          | t, expand, merge<br>file. Specify the          | e, reconnect or shrink a full path to the file.                  | virtual hard disk                 |
| Hard Drive             • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •   | 1             | 2<br>Ne  | ew Ed  | dit Inspect  | Browse                            |

#### 4. Choose Disk Format $\rightarrow$ `VHDX`

| Lew Virtual Hard Disk Wiz  | tard X   |
|--|--|
| 🚢 Choose Disk  | Format   |
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk<br>Summary | <ul> <li>What format do you want to use for the virtual hard disk?</li> <li>VHD<br/>Supports virtual hard disks up to 2,040 GB in size.</li> <li>VHDX<br/>This format supports virtual disks up to 64 TB and is resilient to consistency issues that might occur<br/>from power failures. This format is not supported in operating systems earlier than Windows<br/>Server 2012.</li> </ul> |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cancel  |

5. Choose Disk Type  $\rightarrow$  `Fixed size`



6. Name the data disk

| <ul> <li>New Virtual Hard Disk Wiz</li> <li>Specify Name</li> </ul> | ard<br>ne and Location   | ×      |
|---|--|--------|
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type          | Specify the name and location of the virtual hard disk file. Name: Eyeglass-Data-Disk.vhdx Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks\ | Browse |
| Configure Disk<br>Summary   |  |        |
|   | < Previous Next > Finish   | Cancel |

7. Create a new blank virtual hard disk : 80 GB

| Before You Begin       You can create a blank virtual hard disk or copy the contents of an existing physical disk.         Choose Disk Format       Create a new blank virtual hard disk         Specify Name and Location       Size:         Configure Disk       Size:         Summary       Copy the contents of the specified physical disk:         Physical Hard Disk       Size         \\PHYSICALDRIVE0       278 GB         Copy the contents of the specified virtual hard disk       Path: | 🛓 Configure   | Disk   |                            |
|--|---|--|----------------------------|
| Summary       Physical Hard Disk       Size         \\PHYSICALDRIVE0       278 GB         O       Copy the contents of the specified virtual hard disk         Path:       Browse  | Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type<br>Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk | You can create a blank virtual hard disk or copy the contents of a <ul> <li>Create a new blank virtual hard disk</li> <li>Size: 80 GB (Maximum: 64 TB)</li> <li>Copy the contents of the specified physical disk:</li> </ul> | an existing physical disk. |
| O Copy the contents of the specified virtual hard disk Path: Browse  | Summary   | Physical Hard Disk   | Size<br>278 GB             |
|  |   | O Copy the contents of the specified virtual hard disk Path:   | Browse                     |

#### 8. Complete the data disk Wizard

| 🚢 New Virtual Hard Disk Wi:                                | zard   | × |
|--|--|---|
| 🛓 Completing   | the New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard   |   |
| Before You Begin<br>Choose Disk Format<br>Choose Disk Type | You have successfully completed the New Virtual Hard Disk Wizard. You are about to create the following virtual hard disk. Description:            |   |
| Specify Name and Location<br>Configure Disk<br>Summary     | Format: VHDX<br>Type: fixed size<br>Name: Eyeglass-Data-Disk.vhdx<br>Location: C:\Users\Public\Documents\Hyper-V\Virtual Hard Disks<br>Size: 80 GB |   |
|  | To create the virtual hard disk and close this wizard, click Finish.   |   |
|  | < Previous Next > Finish Cance   |   |

# Configuration of Eyeglass

1. Power up the VM and wait 5-10 minutes to allow Superna on-boot script to run. tail the superna-on-boot.log and wait for it to finish. Then follow the on-screen instruction

tail -2 /var/log/superna-on-boot.log



 $\ \ 2. \ \ {\rm Run \ the \ command \ to \ setup \ your \ \ {\rm Eyeglass \ Hyper-V \ appliance} }$ 

sudo spy-hyperv-setup

When prompted, enter `admin` user password [default password is: 3y3gl4ss] and enter IP, Netmask, Gateway, Hostname, DNS, NTP info



Now check the service status and ensure they are in active (running) state

systemctl status sca scadb lighttpd tomcat sera

4. Open Google Chrome browser and go to the following link

https://<Eyeglass\_IP>

© Superna LLC

# 9. Eyeglass PowerScale Edition Quick Start Guide and Upgrade Guide for RHEL and Centos 7.6, 7.7 and 8.x

Home Top

- Read Me First
- Eyeglass Quick Star t
- System Requirements
- Support limitations
- Supported OneFS releases
- Feature Release Compatibility
- Eyeglass Scalability Limits
- New Eyeglass Installation
- Download Eyeglass
- Deploy the virtual machine with Centos or RHEL
- Steps to Install
- Eyeglass Initial Configuration
- Login to the Eyeglass UI
- Install License
- Add PowerScale Clusters
- NOTE No Auto Refresh Inventory View
- NOTE Cluster DNS Setup and Add Cluster to Inventory:
- Important After Discovery of a Cluster's SynclQ policies all eyeglass configuration jobs are disabled automatically
- Important Clusters on source target must be in the support feature matrix
  - Before you add a cluster to Eyeglass verify SynclQ FQDN Name resolution
- Enable Eyeglass Jobs
- Prerequisite for Enabling Configuration Replication
- Enable Jobs for Configuration Replication
- Initial state for Jobs
- Setup Eyeglass for Email Notification
  - Configure SMTP
  - Configure Email Recipients
- Appendix A
- List of files controlled by Eyeglass
- Eyeglass Upgrade Instructions for RHEL and Centos
  - Pre-requisites:
  - Upgrade Instructions
  - Post Upgrade Instructions
- Installed Package List

## Read Me First

This installer option requires a purchased RPM install license key, a trial key option is available. The OS key is required to use this installer option in production. This is not part of enterprise keys and excluded from maintenance contracts.

This license key allows customers to build their own appliance. Email sales@superna.net for a assistance with ordering.

## **Eyeglass Quick Start**

Use this document to get your new Eyeglass installation up and running fast with all the best options.

For planning DR and understanding design choices with Eyeglass use the Eyeglass Start Here First Guide

## System Requirements

Operating System:

- CentOS Version 7.6, 7.7, 8.x
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux Version 7.6, 7.7, 8.x
- NOTE: The OS itself is not covered under the support contract.

Appliance requirements:

- 4 vCPU
- 16G RAM
- RAM please see scalability table.

\*Note requires shutting down the VM and editing RAM and restart)

- 130 GB disk
- Chrome Browser (preferred), Browser must support Websockets, Internet Explorer not supported. ,
- Eyeglass Port Requirements: Eyeglass-Ports-Requirements

## Support limitations

1. The Operating system maintenance of patches and updates is customer responsibility

- Installation of the Linux Eyeglass installer combines application software and tested and supported dependencies including the following:
  - a. Sudoer configuration
  - b. Lighttpd
- Support statement: This yum package manager will not be allowed to upgrade these components unless forced overwrite option is used. The application versions installed by the Eyeglass dependency rpm is version controlled and is the supported version. Customers that want to update these packages own the risk of breaking application functionality. Support of versions other than the provided version is excluded from support contract coverage. Customers will be asked to downgrade the version if application functionality is impacted by the customer forced override of a supported package version.
- See Appendix A for a controlled list of files set as owned by Eyeglass RPM dependencies and how to force update the affected applications.

## Supported OneFS releases

Please refer to the Release Notes for the Eyeglass PowerScale Edition version that you are installing.

## Feature Release Compatibility

Please refer to the Release Notes for the Eyeglass PowerScale Edition version that you are installing.

## **Eyeglass Scalability Limits**

Please refer to the Eyeglass Admin Guide Scalability limits.

## New Eyeglass Installation

If you are doing a new Eyeglass installation, continue following steps in this document.

## **Download Eyeglass**

Request download Eyeglass RHEL/CENTOS from Superna website Latest Appliance Code Download

## Deploy the virtual machine with Centos or RHEL

Eyeglass is delivered as RPM installer and has dependencies that must be installed

- Subnet and network required so that appliance will have IP connectivity to the PowerScale clusters that it is managing and the users that are using it
- 2. IP address for the appliance
- 3. Gateway
- 4. DNS server
- 5. RPM package dependencies required before installation:
  - a. RHEL 7.x
- nodejs, syslog-ng, lighttpd, protobuf-python, tomcat, net-tools, nfs-utils, python-setuptools, zip , unzip, net-tools-deprecated, python34-pip, rsync, sysstat, fail2ban, perl and epel-release
- ii. The rhel-7-server-optional-rpms repository will have to be enabled for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 installations. Additionally the epel-release package will have to be manually added. Be sure to follow the detailed instructions below for procedure.
- b. RHEL 8.x
- nodejs syslog-ng lighttpd python3-protobuf fontconfig net-tools nfs-utils python3-setuptools zip

unzip python3-pip rsync sysstat fail2ban perl lighttpd

- The epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm repository will have to be enabled for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 installations. Additionally the epel-release package will have to be manually added. Be sure to follow the detailed instructions below for procedure.
- 6. NOTE: If you are using a hostname or FQDN for the target cluster in your SynclQ policies, the DNS information entered here must be able to resolve it back to a discovered cluster ip address (should resolve to a synciq smartconnect zone ip pool ip address) in order for Eyeglass to perform configuration replication. Eyeglass will not create the associated configuration replication job. If the hostname or FQDN cannot be resolved.

## Steps to Install

#### Appliance Deployment steps :

Step 1 : Install Centos or RHEL VM as per above requirements
Step 2 : Download RHEL/Centos RPM installer file: Download the correct run file to your VM using the 7.x or 8.x install file. Follow steps to download the installer https://www.supernaeyeglass.com/downloads and NOTE: You will need the password to download the RHEL licensed installer.

Step 3 : Login as root.

Step 4 : SCP install file to the VM.

Step 5 : chmod 755 install-file-name

Step 6: Edit the file /etc/sysconfig/selinux and set up the

"SELINUX=permissive" parameter, after reboot the vm.

Step 7: Install dependencies

#### RHEL 7.x

1. **If you have RHEL**, you must enable the "*Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Server - Optional (RPMs)*" repository by executing the following command:

subscription-manager repos --enable rhel-7-serveroptional-rpms

- Enable the Extra Packages for Enterprise Linux repository: curl -Ok https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-releaselatest-7.noarch.rpm yum install ./epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm
- 1. All supported versions should now complete dependency install:

yum install nodejs syslog-ng lighttpd protobuf-python tomcat net-tools nfs-utils python-setuptools zip unzip nettools-deprecated python34-pip rsync sysstat fail2ban perl y

| Note: | The syslog-ng has a conflict with rsyslog, you need to remove the rsyslog package to be able install syslog- |
|-------|--|
|       | ng package by executing the following command:<br>yum remove rsyslog   |

#### RHEL 8.x

curl -Ok https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-

8.noarch.rpm

yum install ./epel-release-latest-8.noarch.rpm

yum install nodejs syslog-ng lighttpd python3-protobuf fontconfig

net-tools nfs-utils python3-setuptools zip unzip python3-

pip rsync sysstat fail2ban perl lighttpd -y

Note:The syslog-ng has a conflict with rsyslog, you need to<br/>remove the rsyslog package to be able install syslog-<br/>ng package by executing the following command:<br/>yum remove rsyslog

**Step 8:** ./install-file-name (use the 7.x file or the 8.x install file)

Step 9: verify output to verify installation completes without error,

dependency checks will fail and indicate which packages are not installed

Step 10: Check services are running correctly

- systemctl status sca
- systemctl status -l scadb
- systemctl status lighttpd

**Step 11**: Send install log file in same directory as install file

to http://support.superna.net if installation fails, by opening a support case and attaching file to the case

**Step 12:** Eyeglass appliance sudoers file needs to be updated with this information:

vi sudo configuration file

sca ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /opt/bin/yum,

/opt/superna/bin/kill\_packagekit.sh, /opt/superna/sbin/\*, /usr/bin/systemctl restart syslog

## **Eyeglass Initial Configuration**

Your Eyeglass initial configuration steps are:

- 1. Login to the Eyeglass UI
- 2. Install License
- 3. Create Eyeglass service account first for each PowerScale cluster with minimum permissions (if not done configure Clusters in Eyeglass using root user)
- 4. Add Clusters ()

## Login to the Eyeglass UI

To login to the Eyeglass web UI, enter the following URL into your browser (Chrome preferred) replacing <Eyeglass IP address> with the real IP address assigned to the appliance:

https://<Eyeglass IP address>

You have 2 options for login authentication: *Local* - Select Auth Type "Local" and use the admin user and password configured on the appliance Default user/password: **admin / 3y3gl4ss** 

## **Install License**

Retrieve your Eyeglass License keys (instructions provided here).

NOTE: You will require a CENTOS or RHEL OS license key in addition to other Eyeglass product keys

Upload the license zip file provided to you by Superna:

IMPORTANT: Do not unzip the license file. Upload the zip file.



IMPORTANT: You will be asked to accept the Eyeglass EULA and Phone Home after selecting the Upload button. License will not be loaded unless EULA is accepted.

| Manage Licenses  |      |                 |
|------------------|------|-----------------|
| Loaded Licenses  |      |                 |
| License Holder   | Туре | Quantity Expiry |
|                  |      |                 |
|                  |      |                 |
|                  |      |                 |
|                  |      |                 |
| - Import License |      |                 |

## Add PowerScale Clusters

## NOTE No Auto Refresh Inventory View

This window does not auto refresh after adding a cluster. You must click the refresh button bottom right to verify when a cluster has finished discovery. This process can take 5-10 minutes typically.

#### NOTE Cluster DNS Setup and Add Cluster to Inventory:

If discovery takes a very long time to complete (> 10 minutes), then it's important to check cluster configuration data can resolve external URL. Cloud pools uses a URL to a storage bucket and if this URL can not complete DNS lookup to IP address API calls that discovery cloud pools will take too long to complete and will timeout the cluster discovery.

# Important After Discovery of a Cluster's SynclQ policies all eyeglass configuration jobs are disabled automatically

Configuration Replication Jobs for zones, shares, exports and nfs alias protected by SynclQ Policy automatically created and are in USERDISABLED state after successful provisioning in Eyeglass. Enabling these Jobs will be part of the installation steps.

#### Important Clusters on source target must be in the support feature matrix

PowerScale cluster replication pairs must be running supported OneFS version as documented in the System Requirements / Feature Release Compatibility matrix.

#### Before you add a cluster to Eyeglass verify SynclQ FQDN Name resolution

This step is important to allow eyeglass to automatically build configuration replication jobs correctly. Eyeglass will resolve the FQDN of the SynclQ policy and then compare the returned ip address to all PowerScale clusters added to the eyeglass appliance. If no match is found, Config Sync jobs will fail be be added to the jobs window, until name resolution works correctly. A system alarm is also raised that indicates no matching clusters found for the SynclQ policies on Cluster named X.

- 1. Login to eyeglass
- 2. open eyeglass shell from eyeglass main menu (bottom left)
- 3. login as admin with default password 3y3gl4ss
- 4. Get list of SynclQ policies from the source cluster you are adding and record the FQDN target host value used in the policy
- 5. validate the FQDN will resolve correctly on eyeglass
- 6. nslookup FQDN
  - If an ip address does not get returned you MUST fix this using YAST utility to add DNS to eyeglass (see admin guide for instructions)
  - 2. OR you must sudo to root with sudo -s (enter admin password)
  - 3. vi /etc/hosts and add an entry for the FQDN value that does not resolve correctly

- 4. NOTE: DNS is the preferred solution to resolve entries, hosts file can be used as a work around on the appliance for each smartconnect zone that does not resolve to an ip address
- Repeat nslookup step for each FQDN used on each cluster you want to add to eyeglass for DR management

From the Eyeglass UI add the PowerScale Clusters between which Eyeglass will be replicating the share and export configuration data.

| 1 | Eyeglass Main Menu | > |
|---|--------------------|---|
| 2 | Add Managed Device | > |

| 🛃 Add Ma | naged Device                      |      |        |
|----------|-----------------------------------|------|--------|
| 🖥 Isilon | 🛃 Add Isilon Cluster              |      |        |
| 3        | SmartConnect Service IP:<br>Port: | 8080 |        |
| 4        | Username:                         |      |        |
| 5        | Password:                         |      |        |
| 6        | Maximum RPO Value:                |      |        |
| 7        |                                   |      | Submit |
|          |                                   |      |        |
|          |                                   |      |        |

Note:

- SmartConnect Service must be IP address format.
- Maximum RPO Value is the Recovery Point Objective for the cluster in minutes. If you are using the RPO feature, this target is used during RPO analysis. More information about Eyeglass RPO analysis can be found here.
- To create an Eyeglass service account with minimum privileges follow the instructions provided here.

Once the PowerScale is added, Eyeglass will automatically run an inventory task to discover the PowerScale components. When completed, the discovered inventory can be seen in the Inventory View.



## Enable Eyeglass Jobs

Once you have configured your PowerScale cluster pair and the Inventory task has completed, 3 Eyeglass Jobs are automatically created per SynclQ Policy to replicate between the SynclQ Policy defined source and target. In addition to the Configuration Replication Jobs, Failover Readiness Jobs are created between replicating clusters that monitor the configuration and readiness of Access Zones.

Note: These jobs are disabled by default (see admin guide on how to change default to enable via the CLI). Once enabled they will raise alarms if all configuration for Access Zones is not created or prerequisites completed.

## Prerequisite for Enabling Configuration Replication

 If you have an Active - Active Replication Topology (for data), confirm that you do not have an unsupported share or nfs alias environment described in the diagram below:



- Review Eyeglass Admin Guide Jobs description to understand what the Configuration Replication Jobs will do.
- 2. Review Eyeglass Admin Guide for Configuration Replication Prerequisites
- 3. Review how Eyeglass determines uniqueness for configuration items and what properties are replicated.

## **Enable Jobs for Configuration Replication**

Next step is to enable your Share, Export, NFS Alias (AUTO) Jobs for Configuration Replication. This can be done on a Job by Job basis by following these steps:



Select the Configuration Replication Job to be enabled.

| Jobs              |   |                       |             |                      |                  | $\otimes$ |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------|
| 💄 Job Definitions | <ul> <li>Job Name</li> </ul>            | Policy                | Туре        | Last Run Date        | State            |           |
| Running Jobs      | Configuration Replication: Share, Expo  | rt, Alias replication | (AUTOMATIC) |                      |                  | -         |
| _                 | Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob        | EyeglassRunbo         | AUTO        | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23 | 🌠 ОК             |           |
|                   | Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob       | EyeglassRunbo         | AUTO        | 20/10/2015, 16:05:33 | Policy Disa      |           |
|                   | Configuration Replication: DFS mode (A  | UTOMATIC)             |             |                      |                  |           |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror             | dfs9_mirror           | AUTODFS     | n/a                  | Policy Disa      |           |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_dfs9                   | dfs9                  | AUTODFS     | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23 | 🌇 ОК             |           |
|                   | E Failover: Quota Failover (RUN MANUALI | LY)                   |             |                      |                  |           |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob      | EyeglassRunbo         | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 15:10:32 | 🌇 ОК             |           |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror_quotas      | dfs9_mirror           | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:56:59 | Policy Disa      |           |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo         | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 16:06:14 | Policy Disa      |           |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_dfs9_quotas            | dfs9                  | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:08:36 | 🌇 ок             |           |
|                   | E Failover Readiness (AUTOMATIC)        |                       |             |                      |                  |           |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_Cluster-1-7201          |                       | READINESS   | 21/10/2015, 13:30:05 | 🚘 ОК             |           |
|                   | El Cluster-1-7201_Cluster2-7201         |                       | READINESS   | 21/10/2015, 13:30:06 | 🚘 ок             |           |
|                   | E Failover: Runbook Robot (AUTOMATIC)   |                       |             |                      |                  |           |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo         | RUNBOOK     | 20/10/2015, 16:08:47 | Policy Disa      |           |
|                   | ⊞ ☐ Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob    | EyeglassRunbo         | RUNBOOK     | 21/10/2015, 13:00:00 | 🍒 Error          |           |
|                   | 1 Item(s) selected                      |                       |             | Select a bulk acti   | on 🗸 🛛 Add New J | ob        |

Select a bulk action and then select the Enable/Disable option.

| 😫 Jobs            |  |                      |             |                            | $\otimes$          |
|-------------------|--|----------------------|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| 💄 Job Definitions | Job Name                                 | Policy               | Туре        | Last Run Date              | State              |
| Kunning Jobs      | Configuration Replication: Share, Export | t, Alias replication | (AUTOMATIC) |                            | A                  |
| _                 | ⊞ ☑ Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob     | EyeglassRunbo        | AUTO        | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23       | 🚰 ОК               |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob      | EyeglassRunbo        | AUTO        | 20/10/2015, 16:05:33       | Policy Disa        |
|                   | Configuration Replication: DFS mode (A   | UTOMATIC)            |             |                            |                    |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror              | dfs9_mirror          | AUTODFS     | n/a                        | Policy Disa        |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_dfs9                    | dfs9                 | AUTODFS     | 21/10/2015, 13:30:23       | 👖 ОК               |
|                   | E Failover: Quota Failover (RUN MANUALL  | .Y)                  |             |                            |                    |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob       | EyeglassRunbo        | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 15:10:32       | 🐴 ОК               |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_dfs9_mirror_quotas       | dfs9_mirror          | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:56:59       | Policy Disa        |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob      | EyeglassRunbo        | QUOTA       | 20/10/2015, 16:06:14       | Policy Disa        |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_dfs9_quotas             | dfs9                 | QUOTA       | 21/10/2015, 10:08:36       | 🛃 ОК               |
|                   | E Failover Readiness (AUTOMATIC)         |                      |             |                            |                    |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_Cluster-1-7201           |                      | READINESS   | 21/10/2015 📷 Edit Configur | ation(s)           |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_Cluster2-7201           |                      | READINESS   | 21/10/2015 🌍 Run Now       |                    |
|                   | E Failover: Runbook Robot (AUTOMATIC)    |                      |             | 😇 Enable/Disab             | le Microsoft DFS   |
|                   | E Cluster-1-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob      | EyeglassRunbo        | RUNBOOK     | 20/10/2015 🕥 Set Schedule  |                    |
|                   | E Cluster2-7201_EyeglassRunbookRob       | EyeglassRunbo        | RUNBOOK     | 21/10/20 Enable/Disab      | •                  |
|                   | 1 Item(s) selected                       |                      |             | Select a bulk acti         | on 🗸 🛛 Add New Job |

On the next Configuration Replication cycle, the enabled Job will be run.

## Initial state for Jobs

You can change the default behavior so that these Jobs are enabled by default using the cli commands for here.

## Setup Eyeglass for Email Notification

- 1. Configure SMTP
- 2. Configure Email Recipients

#### Configure SMTP

 Enter the information for your email server in the Notification Center / Configure SMTP tab.

| 📌 Eyeglass I  | Main Menu   |                    |            |
|---|---|--------------------|------------|
| Add Manage Add Manage Alarms Cluster Repo Contact Us / DR Assistan DR Dashboa Eyeglass Sh Kithistoric Data Inventory Vie Si Jobs Inventory Vie Alarms Abs Add Manage Lice Antification ( Quickstart | d Device<br>orts<br>About<br>t<br>rd<br>ell<br>a View<br>ew | Settings<br>Logout |            |
| Visual Tree   | View  |                    |            |
| Notification C  | enter   |                    | - 23       |
| Configure SMTP  | Outgoing Email S  | erver Information  |            |
| Manage Recipients   | Host Name*:   | 192.168.1.250      |            |
| Twitter   | Port*:  | 25                 |            |
| Slack   | From*:  | igls@superna.net   | 7          |
|   | Use Authentication:   |                    |            |
|   | User:   |                    |            |
|   | Password:   |                    |            |
|   | Fachle TIC:   |                    |            |
|   | Enable ILS:   |                    |            |
|   | Alarms more severe th<br>Alarm Severity Filter*:            | CRITICAL           | ,          |
|   | Test Recipient:   | Test Email Setting | Save Close |

- Host name: Enter the host name for your email server
- Port: Enter the port which should be used for sending email

- From: Enter the email address of the sender of the email. Typically this is required to be a valid email address recognized by the email server.
- Use Authentication: Select if email server requires an authenticated login
  - User: User or email address for authentication
  - Password: Password for authentication
- Enable TLS: Select the Enable TLS check box if your email server expects TLS communication.
- Alarm Severity Filter: Select level of alarms for which you would like to receive email.

2. Use the **Test Email Setting** button to check that the email server information added is correct. If an error occurs, you will get error codes from the SMTP connection. The "no error" response indicates successful connection. If error is returned the debug response should be sent to support.superna.net.

3. Save your changes.

#### **Configure Email Recipients**

- Enter the information for your email server in the Notification Center / Manage Recipients tab.
  - Email Recipient: Enter the email address that emails will be sent to.
- 2. Select the **Add** button.

| 🛃 Notification Cente | fr  | $\otimes$ |
|----------------------|---|-----------|
| Configure SMTP       | Recipients                                  | delete    |
| Manage Recipients    |   |           |
| Twitter              |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      |   |           |
|                      | Email Recipient: mary.smith@example.com Add | Cancel    |

## Appendix A

Use this procedure to force update Eyeglass controlled packages.

## List of files controlled by Eyeglass

- 1. /etc/lighttpd/conf.d/proxy.conf
- 2. /etc/lighttpd/lighttpd.conf
- 3. /etc/lighttpd/modules.conf
- 4. /etc/motd
- 5. /etc/sudoers.d/admin

These above mentioned files need to be replaced after you upgrade your RHEL packages. We strongly recommend copying the above mentioned files to a location prior to performing RHEL package upgrade so that they can be copied back safe after upgrade.

## Eyeglass Upgrade Instructions for RHEL and Centos

Use these steps to upgrade an existing RHEL or Centos Eyeglass Appliance:

IMPORTANT: Before upgrading to latest Eyeglass code, please take a VMware snapshot of the Eyeglass appliance. This is the only way to roll back if upgrade fails.

#### Pre-requisites:

1) To download the RHEL/Centos upgrade file open a support ticket to request the download link and password.

2) You may need internet connectivity for this upgrade. If you do not have internet access from the Eyeglass appliance you need to download the extra packages. You are responsible for installing the RHEL packages since RHEL is a licensed product. The installer will detect the missing packages and prompt you on how to install.

We recommend that you run the installer to find the missing packages and proceed accordingly.

#### **Upgrade Instructions**

- 1. Download the file to your local machine.
- 2. ssh to the Eyeglass appliance and assume root user
- 3. Copy the file to the Eyeglass appliance (ie in the /tmp directory).
- 4. Make the file executable (replacing name with specific run file name)

chmod +x eyeglass\_RHEL\_file\_name.run

5. Run the file (replacing name with specific run file name)

./eyeglass\_RHEL\_file\_name.run

6. Upgrade completed.

#### Post Upgrade Instructions

1. After upgrade, using Eyeglass CLI run the following command

## rpm -qa | grep -i 'eyeglass' | grep '<PRE\_UPGRADE\_MAJOR\_EYEGLASS\_VERSION>' | xargs rpm -e

#### example after upgrade from 2.5.4 to 2.5.5 the command would be:

#### rpm -qa | grep -i 'eyeglass' | grep '2.5.4' | xargs rpm -e

- 2. Login to the Eyeglass Web UI.
- 3. Check version number by going to About/Contact

## Installed Package List

eyeglass\_authservice-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_db-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_deps-2.5.7-21105.rhel7.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_licencing-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_logparser-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_pygls-2.5.7-21105.rhel7.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_rest-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_sca-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_sera-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_servicebroker-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm eyeglass\_ui-2.5.7-21105.x86\_64.rpm

Top level OS Dependencies

"base":

"lighttpd",

"nfs-utils",

"nodejs",

"net-tools",

"sysstat",

"rsync",

"fail2ban"

"RHEL 7": [
"python34-pip",
"protobuf-python",
"python-setuptools",
"rsyslog"
],
"RHEL 8": [
"python3-protobuf",
"python3-setuptools",
"(syslog-ng or rsyslog)"
]

## 10. Eyeglass Probe PowerScale installation guide

Home Top

- How to Install Video
- System Overview
- System Requirements Eyeglass and Probe
- Installation Overview
- Install Eyeglass Appliance
- Add PowerScale probe license keys to the appliance
- Add PowerScale clusters to the appliance
- Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe Authentication Token
- Configure Eyeglass Firewall for Probe Service Broker
   Connection
- Import Eyeglass Probe to UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive
- Deploy Eyeglass Probe
- Configure Eyeglass Probe UIM Group of PowerScale clusters for monitoring
- Eyeglass Probe Administration
- Troubleshooting section
- Test Alarm/Event flow to with PowerScale Devices UIM
- Eyeglass Probe Technical Support Playbook

## 10.1. How to Install Video

Home Top How to Install Video

## 10.2. System Overview

Home Top System Overview

Eyeglass Probe for CA UIM leverages Eyeglass DR Orchestration platform software to provide a single integration point for CA UIM and native PowerScale REST API. CA UIM with Eyeglass Probe offers alarm and DR status readiness for PowerScale multi cluster monitoring of hardware, software and DR readiness.



**Eyeglass Probe:** This probe provides inventory and alarm collection from PowerScale clusters and Vblock's.

**Eyeglass Probe Deployment and Management:** Eyeglass Probe is a native UIM probe that is deployed and managed using the UIM Infrastructure Manager. The UIM Infrastructure Manager connects to

an active Hub and allows you to control, configure and manage all robots and probes connected to that hub. It also provides a probe Archive. A probe can be deployed to any UIM hub once it has been imported into the Archive.

 Eyeglass Probe must be installed on a UIM Robot which has IP connectivity to the Eyeglass appliance

For additional documentation on CA UIM, please refer to <u>support.ca.com</u>.

## **10.3. System Requirements Eyeglass and Probe**

Home Top System Requirements Eyeglass and Probe

## UIM

Eyeglass Probe developed using UIM SDK for Java.

Eyeglass Probe was validated using:

## Table 1 UIM Validation List

| UIM Component      | Version                       |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| UIM                | 8.3, 8.4                      |
| Eyeglass appliance | 1.5.4                         |
| UIM Probe          | 1.558                         |
| PowerScale         | 7.2.0.x or 7.2.1.x or 8.0.0.x |
| Vblock Vision IO   | 2.6                           |
| Vcenter            | 5.5 >                         |

## Eyeglass Probe

The Eyeglass Probe installation has the following System Requirements:

- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 64 or greater
- Linux OS supported by UIM
- Hardware or Virtual Machine with 1 G RAM and Dual Core CPU 32 or 64 bit, 10G for the probe

The Eyeglass Probe requires that the following ports on the server be available:

## Table 2 Eyeglass PowerScale appliance Requirements

| Item   | Minimum         | Direct Documentation Link |
|--|-----------------|---------------------------|
| CPU  | 4 x vCPU        | <u>Link</u>               |
| OS   | ESXi > 5.0      | Link                      |
| Disk   | 80GB            | <u>Link</u>               |
| NIC  | 1 x 10 Mbps     | Link                      |
| Firewall Open Ports<br>PowerScale cluster to Eyeglass<br>appliance | See <u>here</u> | See <u>here</u>           |

## Table 3 Eyeglass Probe Port Requirements for Vblock

| Port | Direction | Protocol |
|------|-----------|----------|
| 8443 | Outbound  | https    |
| 5672 | Outbound  | AMQP     |
| 443  | Outbound  | https    |

#### Table 4 Eyeglass Probe Port Requirements

| Port            | Direction | Protocol |
|-----------------|-----------|----------|
| 37356           | outbound  | ТСР      |
| 23458 (default) | inbound   | TCP      |

#### Table 4 Eyeglass Probe Robot Requirements

| ltem              | Operating Range | Minimum |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------|
| CPU               | NA              | 1 vCPU  |
| Memory            | 512MB           | 512MB   |
| Thread Usage      | 2-10            | 2       |
| Handle Usage      | 2-10            | 2       |
| Loaded Classes    | <15             | NA      |
| Heap Memory usage | < 512MB         | NA      |

| File Sizes | UIM Robot Manages log file size      | NA |
|------------|--------------------------------------|----|
|            | and rotation, no other files created |    |

## **10.4. Installation Overview**

Home Top Installation Overview

The installation steps for the Eyeglass Probe are:

- 1. Install the Eyeglass appliance
- 2. Add Probe license keys to the appliance
- 3. Add PowerScale clusters to the appliance
- 4. Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe Authentication Token
- 5. Import Eyeglass Probe into UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive.
- 6. Deploy Eyeglass probe.
- Configure the probe to connect to the eyeglass appliance with the api token
- 8. Send test event from PowerScale
- © Superna LLC

## **10.5. Install Eyeglass Appliance**

#### Home Top Install Eyeglass Appliance

- 1. The appliance can be installed using the instructions here <u>Eyeglass PowerScale</u> <u>Edition Quick Start Guide for Eyeglass</u>
- 1. Installs appliance with ip address
- 2. Adds license keys
- 3. Adds clusters
- © Superna LLC

## 10.6. Add PowerScale probe license keys to the appliance

Home Top

Add PowerScale probe license keys to the appliance

**Overview**: Install license keys, two types exist PowerScale monitoring only or DR enhanced keys available with eyeglass DR automation edition for failover and failback automation.

The DR keys will provide DR state information for replicating cluster pairs and failover status, along with RPO status and compliance.

The monitoring only keys will provide event monitoring on PowerScale clusters

Retrieve license keys

Install keys as per install guide here.

## **10.7. Add PowerScale clusters to the appliance** Home Top Add PowerScale clusters to the appliance

**Overview**: This section is covering both DR monitoring and event monitoring license key functionality.

- 1. DR license key cluster addition instructions follow this guide
- 2. For event monitoring only login to eyeglass appliance ip address https://x.x.x.x with admin userID and default password 3y3gl4ss
- 3. Goto Add Managed Device
- 3. Enter cluster management ip address typically the smartconnect subnet ip address for HA ip address management
- 1. User name with minimum privileges below
- Once done Open Inventory tree icon on the desktop and use Refresh button (Bottom right). To verify complete cluster inventory is completed.
- If the text shows Adding.... This means it's in progress still or discovery error has occurred. If Adding persists for more than 10 minutes, then open a support case <u>http://support.superna.net</u>.
- 4. If it looks like the screenshot above then you are done.

## **10.8. Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe** Authentication Token

Home Top

Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe Authentication Token

## Overview

The Eyeglass Probe needs to be configured with an API token created on the Eyeglass appliance monitoring the PowerScale clusters used for authentication . To create this token:

- 1. Login to Eyeglass appliance with admin user with <a href="https://x.x.x.x">https://x.x.x.x</a> of the appliance
- Open eyeglass main menu to select Eyeglass REST API. Follow screenshots below to complete token creation steps needed to configure the Probe to authenticate to eyeglass appliance

| *                                       | Eyeglass Main Menu  |
|---|---------------------|
| ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ | About / Contact     |
| -0                                      | Add Managed Device  |
| V                                       | Alarms              |
| ā                                       | Cluster Reports     |
| ≡≠                                      | DR Assistant        |
| A                                       | DR Dashboard        |
|   | Eyeglass REST API   |
| Ē                                       | Eyeglass Shell      |
| R                                       | Historic Data View  |
| -0                                      | Inventory View      |
| 2                                       | Jobs                |
| IJ                                      | Logging             |
| P                                       | Manage Licenses     |
| $\times$                                | Notification Center |
|   | Quickstart          |
| <u> </u>                                | Script Editor       |
|   | Visual Tree View    |
|   |                     |

🦿 Eyeglass Main Menu 🔻

3.



| 🛒 Superna Eyeglass REST API (BETA!) |        |   | $= e^{s} \times$ |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---|------------------|
| API Tokens                          | Tokens |   |                  |
| API Explorer                        | Name   | Token   | Revoke           |
|                                     | probe  | igls-1cb6g145u2641n09ce82m0i83n43iijfej9fgbhok4e8dl67f6d5 | ×                |
|                                     |        |   |                  |

#### 5. Done
# **10.9. Configure Eyeglass Firewall for Probe** Service Broker Connection

Home Top

Configure Eyeglass Firewall for Probe Service Broker

Connection

## Overview:

The Probe running on UIM Robot over the network requires a firewall port opened from the probe to Eyeglass (one direction port opened). Note if using converged deployment model with co-resident Robot + probe then the firewall must be modified to open default HUB to Robot port of 48000.

- 1. Login to Eyeglass appliance via ssh
- 2. Type sudo -s
- 3. Enter admin password
- 4. Type yast
- 5. Arrow down to security and users and arrow to firewall enter
- 6. Arrow to Allowed Services
- 7. Tab to Advanced option

| Start-Up<br>Interfaces<br>Allowed Services<br>Masquerading<br>Broadcast | Firewall Configuration: Allowed Services<br>Allowed Services for Selected Zone<br>External ZoneEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEE |  |            |  |  |
|---|---|--|------------|--|--|
| — Logging Level<br>— Custom Rules                                       | Allowed Service<br>dnamma<br>lighttpd<br>lighttpd (lighttpd-ss<br>Secure Shell Server<br>Service: sca                               | Description<br>Open ports for the dnsmssq DNS/DHCP server<br>Open the http port for lighttpd.<br>1) Open ports for Secure Shell Server | l Deleve   |  |  |
|   | [ ] Protect Firewall f  | rom Internal Zone  | [ Advanced |  |  |
| [He]n]  | [Back]  | [fance]]   | [Next      |  |  |

- 8. Enter ports as shown below with the following notes:
- 1. Enter 37356 for TCP when Service Broker port for UIM probe access is required
- Also enter port 48000 if you have installed UIM robot onto the eyeglass appliance for converged deployment model where the UIM robot and probe will run on the eyeglass appliance. Follow Linux Robot install instructions to install a Robot on Eyeglass appliance.

| Here, enter additional ports | Settings for Zone, External Zone              |
|------------------------------|---|
| the firewall zone.           | TCP Ports                                     |
|                              | 48000 373565555555555555555555555555555555555 |
| TCP Ports and UDP Ports can  | UDP Ports                                     |
| be entered as a list of port |   |
| numbers, port names, or port | RPC Ports                                     |
| ranges separated by spaces,  |   |
| such as 22, http, or 137:139 | IP Protocols                                  |
| •                            |   |
| RPC Ports is a list of RPC   |   |
| services, such as nlockmgr,  | [OK] [Cancel]                                 |

- 4. The above image shows both ports setup on the appliance
- 5. Click ok, then exit yast settings to save.
- 6. Done
- © Superna LLC

# **10.10. Import Eyeglass Probe to UIM** Infrastructure Manager Archive

Home Top

Import Eyeglass Probe to UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive

To import Eyeglass Probe to the UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive:

- 1. Login to the UIM Infrastructure Manager.
- 2. Expand the Archive folder and select the hub which is running the Robot where the probe will be deployed.

**Hint**: For the Eyeglass Probe, select the hub which has a Robot that has IP connectivity to the Eyeglass appliance.

3. The list of existing probes archived on this hub is displayed. Click on the right mouse button in this main window pane.

| File View Security Tools Window Help    |                             |  |        |             |                   |             |          |               |                |
|---|-----------------------------|--|--------|-------------|-------------------|-------------|----------|---------------|----------------|
| 🖪 🖪   📽 🖦 🖦   🗳 😫   9                   | 5   🗝   🦛   🔹               |  |        |             |                   |             |          |               |                |
| a Console                               | 🖡 🗗 🖊 🛱 🏦 🛛                 | h. 🏛 😂 🖪 🕾 🔓 🏠 🛍                             | s 🍄    |             |                   |             |          |               |                |
| 🖃 🗓 Domains 🔷                           | Name                        | △ Description                                |        |             | Status            | Version     | Web Ver. | Group         |                |
| 📄 🚰 nimsoft-srvdom 📃                    | ace                         |  |        | 1           | OK                | 2.72        |          | Service       |                |
| 🖃 🎾 nimsoft-srvhub                      | ad_response                 | View   | •      |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.53     | System        |                |
| 🖻 🖉 css-3                               | ad_server                   | Pafrash                                      |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.43     | Application   |                |
| Physical Application                    | 🖆 adevl                     | Kellesh                                      |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.57     | Application   |                |
| 🐤 Infrastructui                         | admin_console               | New  |        |             | OK                | 6.50        |          | Service       |                |
| Service                                 | adogtw                      | Edit   |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 2.71     | Gateway       |                |
| 主 🧊 nimsoft-srv                         | apache                      | D. L.  |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.54     | Application   |                |
| 🖻 🔡 Archive                             | applogic_mon                | Delete                                       |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.01     | Application   |                |
| 🖃 🙀 nimsoft-srvhub                      | applogic_ws                 | Copy   |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.01     | Application   |                |
| 🎒 Adapter                               | ARCserve_D2D                | Parama                                       |        |             | Not in archive    |             | 1.10     | Application   |                |
| 🎒 Application                           | ARCSEIVE_KHA                | Kename                                       |        |             | Not in archive    | 1.24        | 1.00     | Application   |                |
| 🔤 🔤 Custom 😑                            | asseringmi                  | Configure Archived Configuration             |        | uditing     | OK                | 1.24        |          | Service       |                |
| 🥵 Database                              | automated denio             |  |        | uulung      | New version a     | 1.22        | 1 22     | Service       |                |
|   | aws                         | Distribute                                   |        |             | Not in archive    | . 1.21      | 1.10     | Application   | -              |
| 🎒 Infrastructure                        | •                           | View Distribution Progress                   |        |             |                   |             |          |               | F.             |
|   | Internet Archive Mode       | -  |        |             |                   |             |          | Tot: 254 Sel  | e <b>n 1</b> 1 |
| 🏪 jre                                   |                             | Import                                       |        |             |                   |             |          | 1100.204, 001 | •••••          |
| 🚰 Network                               | Message                     | Download                                     |        |             | Time              | Level       |          |               | <u>^</u>       |
| 🏪 SDK                                   | Loading configure           | F 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1                            |        |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Information |          |               |                |
| 🥵 Service                               | Extended SDP Acc            | Explore Internet Archive                     |        |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Information |          |               |                |
| <b>f</b>                                | Dynamic Views da            | Product Information                          |        |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Warning     |          |               | =              |
| 🏪 Storage                               | Dynamic Views da            | Internet Archive Mede                        |        |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Information |          |               |                |
| 🎒 System                                | Data Engine versio          | Internet Archive Mode                        | · ·    |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Information |          |               |                |
| - Sector UMP                            | Connected to NIS            | Print Preview                                |        |             | 08/07/13 08:26:42 | Information |          |               |                |
| Licenses                                | Validating basis            | Print  |        | ingine      | 08/07/13 08:20:41 | Information |          |               |                |
| Applications                            | Attempting contr            |  |        | h/nimcoft   | 09/07/12 09:20:41 | Information |          |               |                |
|   | Vour license will e         | Edit   | •      | o/ minisort | 08/07/13 08:20:41 | Information |          |               |                |
| < <                                     | Login hub: /nimsoft-si      | rvdom/nimsoft-srvhub/nimsoft-srv/hub, Il     | P: 192 | .168.1.120  | 08/07/13 08:26:41 | Information |          |               | -              |
| Login: /nimsoft-srvdom/nimsoft-srvhub/r | nimsoft-srv/hub User: admin | istrator ACL: Superuser, Profile: default 14 | 6 💼    |             | 233               |             |          |               |                |

4. Select the **Import** option in the menu that opens.

Figure 2 UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive Import Package

5. Select the probe package that you would like to add to the archive and then select the **Open** button.

| 1 | Open           |                   |   |                    | ×           |
|---|----------------|-------------------|---|--------------------|-------------|
| i | Look in: 📗     | supema eyeglass   | • | 🗢 🗈 💣 📰 🔻          |             |
|   | Name           | *                 |   | Date modified      | Туре        |
| 6 | 🖳 superna_     | eyeglass.zip      |   | 07/04/2016 5:28 PM | WinZip File |
|   | •              |                   |   |                    | •           |
| t | File name:     | Temp              |   |                    | Open        |
|   | Files of type: | Zip files (*.zip) |   | •                  | Cancel      |

## Figure 3 UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive Package

## Selection

1. The package(s) are added to your archive and appear in the main window pane for the hub.



Figure 4 UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive Package List

© Superna LLC

# 10.11. Deploy Eyeglass Probe

Home Top Deploy Eyeglass Probe

## Prerequisites

There are no prerequisite for installing Eyeglass Probe.

# Deploy Eyeglass Probe

To deploy the Eyeglass Probe on a UIM Robot:

- 1. Login to the UIM Infrastructure Manager.
- 2. Select the Archive where the probe was imported.
- 3. Expand the Domains and hub folders until you can see the Robot where the probe will be deployed.

**Hint**: For the Eyeglass Probe, the Robot where it is deployed must have IP connectivity to the Eyeglass appliance.

4. Drag the Eyeglass Probe from the package archive and drop it onto the Robot.

| Infrastructure Manager         | and the                     |   |                                  |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| File View Security Tools Windo | w Help                      |   |                                  |
|                                | 🖚   🙀   🍄                   |   |                                  |
| a Console                      | 🛼 🗗   🎮 🖓 💫   🗽 🏛   🎒   💀   | ъ | 🔓 🔓 🤂 🏙 🧯                        |
| 🖓 🛍 Domains                    | Name                        | Δ | Description                      |
| 🖻 📴 nimsoft81dom               | sql_response                |   | SQL response Monitor             |
| ianimsoft81hub                 | sqlserver.                  |   | SQL Server Monitor               |
| 🕀 🖓 igls-update1               | 🖶 superna_eyeglass          |   | Superna Eyeglass Isilon Probe    |
| inux-mj5y                      | 🖀 superna_eyeglass_alarm    |   | Probe SDK Remote Template        |
|                                | SupernaNET_Converge_Monitor |   | Monitors alams and inventory for |
| 🗄 📲 Archive                    | SupernaNET_Converge_Render  |   | Superna Converged Infrastructure |
| ⊕ <b>%_</b> nimsoft81hub       | sybase 🖉                    |   | Sybase Monitor                   |
| Licenses                       | sybase_rs                   |   | Sybase Replication Server probe  |
| F                              | sysloggtw                   |   | Syslog Gateway for Nimsoft       |
| 🛱 🚜 URLs                       | sysstat                     |   | iSeries system statistics        |
|                                | 🚰 tcp_proxy                 |   | TCP/IP Proxy Service Probe       |
|                                | threshold_migrator          |   | Threshold Migrator Probe         |
|                                | 🗱 timedQ                    |   | Timed posting of messages in a q |
|                                | TNGgtw                      |   | Framework Integration for Unicen |
|                                | tngobjects                  |   | Extract object states from CORE  |

## Figure 5 UIM Infrastructure Manager Archive Package List

5. The Eyeglass Probe is automatically installed but not started until configured.



 Configure probe connection to eyeglass appliance from the admin console interface by selecting the Configure... option

| _    |   | _   |                               |                |           |               |             |                |
|------|---|---|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| ſ    | Infrastructure Manager                  |   |                               |                |           |               |             | - • •×         |
| ilte | File View Security Tools Window         | w Help                                    |                               |                |           |               |             |                |
| bar  | 🔲 📰 📽 🖦 🖷 🖀 🛸                           | - 🖚   🙀   💠                               |                               |                |           |               |             |                |
|      | Console                                 | 🗛 🔂 🗛 🎖 🍇 🖿 🖉                             | i 😼 👟                         |                |           |               |             |                |
|      | E-lia Domains                           | Probe                                     | Robot Address                 | Class De       | scription |               | Group       | Address        |
| ter  | inimsoft81dom                           | superna_eyeglass                          | /nimsoft81dom/nimsoft81hu     | View           |           | on Probe      | Application | /nimsoft81dom/ |
|      | ⊕_∭e igls-updatel                       | • vmware                                  | / nimsotto1 dom/ nimsotto1 nu | lle            |           | CSX Server    | Application | /nimsofta1dom/ |
| 4    | ⊕– De linux-mj5y                        |   |                               | op             |           |               |             |                |
| ٦    | - De nimsott81                          |   |                               | Configure      | Ctrl+Z    |               |             |                |
| to_  | - Cateway                               |   |                               | Activate       |           |               |             |                |
|      |   |   |                               | Deactivate     |           |               |             |                |
|      | - Network                               |   |                               | Restart        |           |               |             |                |
|      | Service                                 |   |                               | New            |           |               |             |                |
| "    | System                                  |   |                               | Edit           |           |               |             |                |
|      | E-# Archive                             |   |                               | Delete         |           |               |             |                |
| 1    |   |   |                               | View Log       | Ctrl+V    |               |             |                |
| ste  |   |   |                               | View Dashboard | Ctrl+M    |               |             |                |
|      | ⊕- 🥲 URLs                               |   |                               | Update Version |           |               |             |                |
|      |   |   |                               | Print Preview  |           |               |             |                |
|      |   | •   |                               | Print          |           |               |             |                |
| m    |   |   |                               | Security       | •         |               |             | Tot 2, Set 1   |
|      |   | Message                                   | emired (21, (ab. 2016)        | Edit           | ,         | 106 17/2012   | Level       | ^              |
| E.   |   | No valid connection with NIS Datab        | expired (21-red-2010)         |                | 04/0      | 7/16 17:29:12 | Warning     |                |
| pe   |   | Unable to connect to NIS Database         |                               |                | 04/0      | 7/16 17:29:12 | Warning     | •              |
|      | Login: /nimsoft81dom/nimsoft81hub/nimso | ft81/hub   User. administrator   ACL: Sup | eruser, Profile: default 359  | 192671         | !         |               |             |                |

7. Add the information required for the superna eyeglass probe to connect to the superna eyeglass appliance by selecting the service\_broker folder in the Raw Configure window:

ipaddress: Enter the IP address of the superna eyeglass appliance for the probe to connect

port: Enter 37356 (This is the port on which the superna eyeglass is expecting the probe to connect on and should not be changed)

Example:

| Raw Configure                                      |                                 |                                 |                               |
|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| setup<br>startup<br>probe_config<br>service_broker | Key<br>Key<br>ipaddress<br>Port | Value<br>172.16.86.174<br>37356 | New Section<br>Delete Section |
|  |                                 |                                 | New Key                       |
|  |                                 |                                 | Edit Key                      |
|  |                                 |                                 | Delete Key                    |
|  |                                 |                                 |                               |
|  |                                 |                                 | OK                            |
|  |                                 |                                 | Apply                         |
|  |                                 |                                 | Cancel                        |
|  |                                 |                                 | Help                          |
| Probe: superna_eyeglass                            |                                 |                                 |                               |

8. Add the information required for the superna eyeglass appliance to be able to connect to the superna eyeglass probe in order to pass the alarm and event information by selecting the **probe\_config** folder in the Raw Configure window:

ipaddress: Enter the IP address of the robot on which the superna eyeglass probe is deployed (default provided but can be overridden)

port: Enter the port on which the probe will be listening for notifications from the superna eyeglass appliance (default provided but can be overridden - port must be outside the port range allocated to Nimsoft)

token: Enter the authentication token generated in previous step Configure Eyeglass Appliance Probe Authentication Token

Example:

| Raw Configure   |                                   |  |                            |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| setup<br>startup<br><b>probe_config</b><br>service_broker | Key<br>ipaddress<br>port<br>token | Value<br>172.31.1.4<br>23457<br>igls-k73sn7dk61ri2jklgg8djt40pd71eeac28. | New Section Delete Section |
|   |                                   |  | New Key                    |
|   |                                   |  | Edit Key                   |
|   |                                   |  | Delete Key                 |
|   |                                   |  |                            |
|   |                                   |  | OK                         |
|   |                                   |  | Apply                      |
|   |                                   |  | Cancel                     |
|   |                                   |  | Help                       |
| Probe: superna_eyeglass                                   |                                   |  |                            |

- After applying the configuration and click ok, the auto probe start should start the probe and attempt a connection to eyeglass appliance.
- 10. To verify the probe deployment, select the Robot where the probe was deployed. You should see the Eyeglass Probe in the list that is displayed with "Yes" in the Active column.



## Figure 6 Eyeglass Probe in the UIM Infrastructure Manager Robot Probe List

 If the probe does not start and show green with a process ID and port listed in UIM. Then proceed to troubleshooting probe startup section in Troubleshooting section

- Its also recommended the eyeglass appliance service broker lists the probe connection. This can be verified by logging into eyeglass appliance as was done for the add cluster steps.
- 1. Then open Service Broker Icon on the desktop
- The login registration from entered during probe configuration should be listed with Active state which means a TCP connection is setup with the probe.
- 3. If the Probe loses contact with the eyeglass appliance due to network issue the status will change to inactive.

| 🔑 Manage Services |      |                      |  | _ 2 ×  |
|-------------------|------|----------------------|--|--------|
| IP                | Port | Service Type         | Eyeglass Token   | State  |
| 172.31.1.13       | 8899 | eyeglass_alarm_probe | igls-1an6dp1m4b2hdpesaj2rqtbaval4so18i3u32919nk59vd709 | ACTIVE |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |

| 🔑 Manage Servic |      |                      |  | - 23      |
|-----------------|------|----------------------|--|-----------|
| IP              | Port | Service Type         | Eyeglass Token   | State     |
| 172.31.1.13     | 8899 | eyeglass_alarm_probe | igls-1an6dp1m4b2hdpesaj2rqtbaval4so18i3u32919nk59vd709 | TINACTIVE |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |
|                 |      |                      |  |           |

 Once this configuration is completed, the superna eyeglas probe will be ready to receive alarms from eyeglass appliance devices monitored once configured in eyeglass.

© Superna LLC

4

# **10.12. Configure Eyeglass Probe UIM Group of PowerScale clusters for monitoring**

Home Top

Configure Eyeglass Probe UIM Group of PowerScale clusters

for monitoring

To configure the Eyeglass Probe clusters managed by Eyeglass displayed in a group:

- 1. Log in as an administrator to the UIM UMP.
- 2. The UIM UMP home page appears.
- 3. Create (Dynamic folder of discovered Clusters by finding device names of Eyeglass appliance ip address)
- 4. This will place clusters into a group for all managed PowerScale clusters

© Superna LLC

# 10.13. Eyeglass Probe Administration

Home Top Eyeglass Probe Administration

## Overview

This chapter presents the following topics: Use the image below for all actions

- 1. Start the superna\_Eyeglass probe (activate)
- 1. Stop the superna\_Eyeglass probe (deactivate)
- 2. Restart the superna\_Eyeglass
- 3. Delete the superna\_Eyeglass probe
- 4. View debug log for startup errors

| Probe                             | △ Robot Address               |               | Class      | Description               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------------------|
| superna_eyegla                    | iss //IIMsupport.doma<br>View | in/UIMsu<br>▶ | Probe/Port | Superna Eyegli            |
|                                   | Up                            |               | _          |                           |
|                                   | Configure                     | Ctrl+Z        | _          |                           |
|                                   | Activate                      |               |            |                           |
|                                   | Deactivate                    |               | _          |                           |
|                                   | Restart                       |               |            |                           |
|                                   | New                           |               |            |                           |
|                                   | Edit                          |               |            |                           |
| <                                 | Delete                        |               |            |                           |
|                                   | View Log                      | Ctrl+V        |            | 1                         |
| Message                           | View Dashboard                | Ctrl+M        |            | Time                      |
| Dynamic Views                     | Update Version                |               |            | 04/06/16 16:              |
| Dynamic Views                     | Print Preview                 |               | -          | 04/06/16 16:              |
| Data Engine ve     Connected to I | rs<br>VI Print                |               |            | 04/06/16 16: 04/06/16 16: |
| NIS Data Engin                    | e: Security                   | +             | UIMsupport | 04/06/16 16:              |
| Validating basi                   | c Edit                        | +             | -          | 04/06/16 16:              |
| Error on comm                     | and: hubsec_edit              |               |            | 04/06/16 16:              |

© Superna LLC

# 10.14. Troubleshooting section

Home Top Troubleshooting section

If the probe fails to start follow these steps

1. Check Service Broker registration listing in eyeglass appliance (see steps above for checking status) should show active

| 🔑 Manage Services |      |                      |  | 2 ×    |
|-------------------|------|----------------------|--|--------|
| IP                | Port | Service Type         | Eyeglass Token   | State  |
| 172.31.1.13       | 1999 | eyeglass_alarm_probe | igls-1an6dp1m4b2hdpesaj2rqtbaval4so18i3u32919nk59vd709 | ACTIVE |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |
|                   |      |                      |  |        |

2. View UIM Probe log

1.

- 1. Select probe in UIM
- 2. Right click for menu and select view log and raise support case or resolve the error from the message

| 🖬 🗈   🎮 🖗                        | š 🕷   h. 🏛   😂             | 6                 |            |              |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|------------|--------------|
| Probe                            | A Robot Address            |                   | Class      | Description  |
| superna_eyegla                   | ass //IIMsupport o<br>View | lomain/UIMsu<br>) | Probe/Port | Superna Eyeg |
|                                  | Up                         |                   |            |              |
|                                  | Configure                  | Ctrl+Z            |            |              |
|                                  | Activate                   |                   |            |              |
|                                  | Deactivate                 |                   |            |              |
|                                  | Restart                    |                   | _          |              |
|                                  | New                        |                   |            |              |
|                                  | Edit                       |                   |            |              |
| <                                | Delete                     |                   |            |              |
|                                  | View Log                   | Ctrl+V            |            |              |
| Message                          | View Dashboa               | rd Ctrl+M         |            | Time         |
| Extended SDP /     Dynamic Views | Ad<br>Update Versio        | n                 |            | 04/06/16 16  |
| Dynamic Views                    | 5 C Drint Draview          |                   | _          | 04/06/16 16  |
| Data Engine ve                   | ers Print Preview          |                   |            | 04/06/16 16  |
| Connected to I                   | NI Print                   |                   |            | 04/06/16 16  |
| NIS Data Engin                   | e: Security                | •                 | UIMsupport | 04/06/16 16  |
| Internal ACL up                  | pc Edit                    | ,                 |            | 04/06/16 16  |
| Error on comm                    | and: hubsec_edit           |                   |            | 04/06/16 16  |

- 3. Restart the broker service on eyeglass
- 1. Login via ssh as admin to eyeglass appliance
- 2. Sudo -s
- 3. Enter admin password
- 4. systemctl restart iglsservicebroker
- © Superna LLC

# 10.15. Test Alarm/Event flow to with PowerScale Devices UIM

Home Top

Test Alarm/Event flow to with PowerScale Devices UIM

- 1. Login to OneFS UI goto Dashboard, Events, Notification Settings
- 2. Click Send test event
- 3. Open UIM console alarm view and verify the test event appears NOTE: Can take up to 1 minute to appear.

© Superna LLC

# **10.16. Eyeglass Probe Technical Support Playbook**

Home Top

# Eyeglass Probe Technical Support Playbook

## Eyeglass Probe Capabilities and Components Monitored

Eyeglass Probe for CA UIM leverages PowerScale REST API and SSH to monitor PowerScale clusters and provide DR status for SyncIQ replication:

**Eyeglass Probe:** This probe provides inventory, state and alarm collection from individual clusters and replicating pairs of clusters with SynclQ replication.

This subject of this document is the Eyeglass Probe.

The primary capabilities of the Eyeglass Probe are to:

- Collect cluster Events and convert to UIM alarms
- Tag clusters with name and node for each alarm
- Provide SyncIQ monitoring and DR status from Eyeglass DR dashboard and raise alarms on DR readiness changes

The Eyeglass Probe monitors the following components:

| Component           | Version                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| PowerScale clusters | 7.2.0.x, 7.2.1.x, 8.0.0.x |
| SynclQ replication  | 7.2.0.x, 7.2.1.x, 8.0.0.x |

## Overview of Architecture

Eyeglass Probe is solution that monitors PowerScale clusters and Vblocks . It collects the inventory and state information from these clusters and passes it to the Eyeglass PowerScale Dashboard. It also collects alarm information from these devices and passes it to Nimsoft UIM bus.

The data flow between Eyeglass Probe.



Description of Main Probe Tasks:

| Task                                      | Description  |
|---|--|
| Inventory and Calculated (Calc)<br>Status | <ul> <li>Protocol: REST</li> <li>Scheduled retrieval of information every 5 minutes</li> </ul> |
| Events                                    | Rest API   |
| DR Status                                 | Eyeglass REST API  |
| Events Vblock                             | AMQP   |
| Vblock Inventory                          | REST and SOAP  |

Configuration and Log Files

#### Eyeglass Probe

#### Configuration Items

Configuration files are located in the C:\Program Files

(*x86*)\*Nimsoft*\*probes*\*marketplace*\*superna\_eyeglass* directory. Following files have primary function in configuration of running probe:

| File                               | Description  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Superna_eyeglass.cfg .jar and .cfx | File containing parameters used by probe on initial startup. |
| superna_eyeglass.txt               | Log file with errors on startup or exit                      |

#### Log Files

Log files are located in the C:\Program Files

(*x86*)\*Nimsoft*\*probes*\*marketplace*\*superna\_eyeglass*directory. Following log files contain the operational logging information for the probe:

| File                 | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| superna_eyeglass.txt | <ul> <li>File containing logs related to:</li> <li>Starting probe</li> <li>Stopping probe</li> <li>Connection to eyeglass appliance service broker process</li> </ul>  |
|                      | Example log entry for Starting probe:<br>May 27 13:26:40:976 [main, superna_eyeglass] ======= START:<br>Calling startupAndRestartInitialization(0) ======<br>May 27 13:26:40:976 [main, superna_eyeglass] ======== START:<br>Reading configuration files and setting up monitors ======<br>May 27 13:26:40:976 [main, superna_eyeglass] START:<br>GenResourceFactory.readAllQosDefs<br>May 27 13:26:40:976 [main, superna_eyeglass] DONE:<br>GenResourceFactory.readAllQosDefs entries: 0<br>May 27 13:26:40:976 [main, superna_eyeglass] ========= START:<br>Scheduling DataCollectors for Resources =======<br>May 27 13:26:40:992 [main, superna_eyeglass] SCHEDULER: using |

| May 27 13:26:40:992 [main, superna_eyeglass] ======= DONE:<br>Scheduling DataCollectors for Resources =======<br>May 27 13:26:40:992 [main, superna_eyeglass] ======== DONE:<br>Reading configuration files and setting monitors =======<br>May 27 13:26:40:992 [main, superna_eyeglass] ======== DONE:<br>Finished startupAndRestartInitialization ========<br>May 27 13:26:44:918 [pool-1-thread-1, superna_eyeglass] Starting the<br>eyeglass probe in 5 seconds<br>May 27 13:26:44:918 [pool-1-thread-1, superna_eyeglass] Right<br>before the registration call<br>May 27 13:26:44:965 [pool-1-thread-1, superna_eyeglass] Created<br>service to listen on port 23457<br>May 27 13:26:44:965 [pool-1-thread-1, superna_eyeglass] Service<br>listening |
|--|
|--|

**Debugging Facilities** 

None available.

#### Troubleshooting

#### Inventory Not Collected

Setup:

- Eyeglass Probe deployed and configured to Eyeglass appliance
- Eyeglass PowerScale licenses installed
- Eyeglass PowerScale connection to PowerScale Clusters

#### Problem:

In the Eyeglass PowerScale inventory tree the cluster shows Adding.....

| L Inventory View    | $\otimes$   |
|---------------------|-------------|
| Nodes               | Calc Status |
| - 🗁 Managed Devices | •           |
| +- 🔁 Cluster-1-7201 | •           |
| +- 🗂 Cluster2-7201  | •           |
|                     |             |

Troubleshooting:

1. Refresh the Eyeglass PowerScale Inventory tree.

2. Determine elapsed time since was added. inventory may take 5 - 10 minutes depending on the state of the system when the was added:

- Was inventory collection task in progress when was added? The in-progress inventory task has to complete before inventory for a new is added.
- How many inventories are being completed simultaneously.

3. Look in main.log and determine whether there was an inventory failure. You will see this almost immediately after NDEUpdate task starts with an entry in main.log that looks something like this: 2013-11-04 15:39:14,898 NDEUpdateTask:collectData [211] Failed to get Inventory Data.

2013-11-04 15:39:14,898 RefreshNEData:doDataRefresh [183] Could not sync inventory for new nodes - Failed to get Shelf Data - Inventory failed

Troubleshooting Steps for connect to Eyeglass appliance:

- 1. Connect using <u>https://x.x.x.x</u>
- 2. Ensure ports 443, 2011 and 2012 are not blocked between browser and the appliance

#### Unable to Load Licenses Troubleshooting

#### Problem:

Try to upload the license zip file to the Eyeglass license manager .

#### Troubleshooting:

1. Browser License upload only works with Chrome browser.

#### Alarms not appearing in UIM

Setup:

- Eyeglass Probe deployed and configured to Eyeglass appliance
- Eyeglass PowerScale licenses installed
- Eyeglass PowerScale connection to PowerScale Clusters

#### Problem:

Alarms do not appear to be processed in UIM from PowerScale clusters.

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Login to eyeglass appliance and check status of the probe connection to the service broker process in eyeglass
- 2. On desktop open the Services

| 🔑 Manage Services | P Manage Services |                      |  |        |  |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|--|--------|--|--|--|
| IP                | Port              | Service Type         | Eyeglass Token   | State  |  |  |  |
| 172.31.1.13       | 8899              | eyeglass_alarm_probe | igls-1an6dp1m4b2hdpesaj2rqtbaval4so18i3u32919nk59vd709 | ACTIVE |  |  |  |
|                   |                   |                      |  |        |  |  |  |

- 3.
- 4. If the State shows inactive it means the IP connection has failed between the probe machine and the eyeglass appliance
- 5. Check probe machine and test ping from this machine to the appliance
- 6. If this is successful then:
- 7. Login to eyeglass appliance via ssh using admin user account
- 8. Check tcp connections from the probe host machine using
- 9. Netstat -p | grep x.x.x.x (where x.x.x.x is ip address of the machine running the probe)
  - a. If no tcp connections are seen from this source ip address it indicates connection issues on this port

#### 10. Now try this command from the machine running the probe

- a. telnet y.y.y.y 37356 (y.y.y.y is the ip address of the eyeglass appliance and requires telnet on the probe machine)
- b. If connection is successful to the service broker port it indicates the connection is successful and telnet UI will appear to hang.
- c. If this fails this message will be seen
- d. Trying y.y.y.y...
- e. telnet: connect to address y.y.y.y: Connection refused
- f. telnet: Unable to connect to remote host
- g. If the command fails use another PC other than the probe host and try the same command. This will help identify if a firewall is blocking access to this port between the probe host and the eyeglass appliance

#### Can not Add PowerScale clusters to Eyeglass Appliance

Setup:

- Eyeglass Probe deployed and configured to Eyeglass appliance
- Eyeglass PowerScale licenses installed

#### Problem:

Can not add clusters to eyeglass for monitoring

#### Troubleshooting

- 1. Verify that ports https over 8080 and ssh 22 are open between the eyeglass appliance the PowerScale clusters and try again
- 2. Eyeglass will return password error if the password is incorrect. Failure to add will not be user or password related
- 3. Verify the required service broker ports are open between the Eyeglass appliance the robot running the probe. Verify the firewall on the eyeglass appliance has opened the ports for the Probe default port connect and register.
- 4. Verify ip reachability with ping and no firewall blocks ports
- 5. Open a case with support if known of the above resolve the adding... cluster.

#### © Superna LLC

# 11. Eyeglass Installation Procedure - Proxmox kvm qcow

Home Top

- Support Statement
- Superna Eyeglass OVx Conversion Procedure
- ECA OVx Conversion Procedure

# Support Statement

This guide is as is and not supported by the support contract. This is provided as a guide example only to be used as a reference for the Proxmox hypervisor that uses qcow and KVM. These steps only apply to this hypervisor but is an example of how a OVF/OVA can be converted.

# Superna Eyeglass OVx Conversion Procedure

Create a new VM in Proxmox, taking note of VM ID, you can give it a name for your ease.

### General:

| Create: Vir |    | $\otimes$   |     |            |                |     |   |
|-------------|----|-------------|-----|------------|----------------|-----|---|
| General     | OS | Hard Disk   | CPU | Memory     | Network Conf   | ïrm |   |
| Node:       |    | pve-r210-01 |     | ~          | Resource Pool: |     | ~ |
| VM ID:      |    | 102         |     | $\diamond$ |                |     |   |
| Name:       |    |             |     |            |                |     |   |
|             |    |             |     |            |                |     |   |

## OS: Don't Use any any media, OS : Linux 4.x/3.x Kernel

| Create: Virtual Ma | achine             |     |        |           |                    | $\otimes$ |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----|--------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|
| General OS         | Hard Disk          | CPU | Memory | Network   | Confirm            |           |
| OUse CD/DVD o      | lisc image file (i | so) |        | Guest OS: |                    |           |
| Storage:           | local              |     |        | Туре:     | Linux              | $\sim$    |
| ISO image:         |                    |     | $\sim$ | Version:  | 4.X/3.X/2.6 Kernel | $\sim$    |
| O Use physical C   | D/DVD Drive        |     |        |           |                    |           |
| 💿 Do not use any   | / media            |     |        |           |                    |           |

Hard Disk: Change 'Bus/Device' to SATA, Everything else can be left as defaults, this HD will be removed in a later step.

| Create: Virtual  | Machine       |               |          |         |                    | $\otimes$ |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| General OS       | Hard Disk     | CPU M         | emory    | Network | Confirm            |           |
| Bus/Device:      | SATA          | ~ 0           | $\hat{}$ | Cache:  | Default (No cache) | $\sim$    |
| Storage:         | VMStorage     |               | $\sim$   |         |                    |           |
| Disk size (GiB): | 32            |               | $\hat{}$ |         |                    |           |
| Format:          | QEMU image fo | ormat (qcow2) | $\sim$   |         |                    |           |
|                  |               |               |          |         |                    |           |

### CPU: 2 Sockets, 2 Cores. Default (kvm64) type was tested

| Create: Vir | tual Ma | ichine    |     |          |              |                 | $\otimes$ |
|-------------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------|
| General     | OS      | Hard Disk | CPU | Memory   | Network C    | Confirm         |           |
| Sockets:    | 2       | 2         |     | $\hat{}$ | Туре:        | Default (kvm64) | $\sim$    |
| Cores:      | 2       | 2         |     | $\hat{}$ | Total cores: | 4               |           |
|             |         |           |     |          |              |                 |           |

## Memory: 16384MB Ram (16G)

| Create: Vir | tual Ma | chine     |     |          |         |         | $\otimes$ |
|-------------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|---------|---------|-----------|
| General     | OS      | Hard Disk | CPU | Memory   | Network | Confirm |           |
| Memory (Mi  | B):     | 16384     | ļ   | $\hat{}$ |         |         |           |

**Network:** Add an Ethernet adapter (VirtIO Paravirtualized was tested), and a **VLAN tag** if required.

| Create: Virtual Machine |                   |           |     |          |             |                          |        |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----|----------|-------------|--------------------------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| General                 | OS                | Hard Disk | CPU | Memory   | Network     | Confirm                  |        |  |  |  |  |
| No networ               | No network device |           |     |          |             |                          |        |  |  |  |  |
| Bridge:                 | v                 | mbr0      |     | ~        | Model:      | VirtIO (paravirtualized) | $\sim$ |  |  |  |  |
| VLAN Tag:               | n                 | o VLAN    |     | $\hat{}$ | MAC address | auto                     |        |  |  |  |  |
| Firewall:               |                   |           |     |          |             |                          |        |  |  |  |  |

Click on the newly created VM, click Hardware, and then select Hard Disk (scsi0), then click **Detach** and Yes when asked to confirm.

| Summary        | Add V Detach Edit F     | Resize disk Move disk Revert                   |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|
| >_ Console     | 🖃 Keyboard Layout       | Default  |
| Hardware       | m Memory                | 16.00 GiB                                      |
| Cloud-Init     | Processors              | 4 (2 sockets, 2 cores)                         |
| A Options      | Display                 | Default  |
|                | CD/DVD Drive (ide2)     | none,media=cdrom                               |
| I Task History | Hard Disk (sata0)       | VMStorage:101/vm-101-disk-1.qcow2,size=32G     |
| Monitor        | ➡ Network Device (net0) | virtio=C6:FE:01:0E:FA:91,bridge=vmbr0,tag=1681 |
| 🖺 Backup       |                         |  |

The Hard Disk will drop into an Unused Disk state. Select this Unused Disk and select **Remove** 

| Summary        | Add V Remove Edit       | Resize disk Move disk Revert          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| >_ Console     | Keyboard Layout         | Default                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| - Hardware     | Memory                  | 16.00 GiB                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Cloud-Init     | Processors              | 4 (2 sockets, 2 cores)                |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| A Options      | Display                 | Default                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                | OCD/DVD Drive (ide2)    | none,media=cdrom                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| I Task History | ➡ Network Device (net0) | virtio=E2:17:71:7D:F7:18,bridge=vmbr0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Monitor        | 🖨 Unused Disk 0         | VMStorage:106/vm-106-disk-1.qcow2     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🖺 Backup       |                         |                                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Virtual Machine 106 (GoldenCopy) on node 'pve-r210-01'

### Option 1: OVF/VMDK only

Download the VMDK from repo. IF OVA, extract the vmdk from the OVA using an archive program. (7zip, winzip winrar all work).

Transfer the VMDK to Proxmox VE images folder (/var/lib/vz/images)

scp Superna\_Eyeglass.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64-disk1-pve.vmdk root@proxmoxip:/var/lib/vz/images

SSH over to the Proxmox HV to perform the following steps.

Convert the image to qcow2:

qemu-img convert -f vmdk Superna\_Eyeglass.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64-disk1.vmdk

-O qcow2 Superna\_Eyeglass.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64.qcow2

You can now **copy (or move)** this qcow to the VMID subfolder from above.

At this point, Proxmox should populate the WebUI with the new drive so it can be simply attached. If it doesn't, manually add the drive by editing the VM config file, stored by default at */etc/pve/qemuserver* and add the following line to the end of the config file:

unused0: local:<id>/<filename>

Where **<ID>** is the VMID noted above and **<filename>** is the name of qcow2 disk to be attached to the VM. E.g.

Return to the Proxmox WebUI where you will find the eyeglass boot disk, designated as 'unused'.

Double click on the unused disk to Attach it to the VM:

Bus/Device: SATA 0

| Add: Unused Disk           |   |                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Bus/Device:<br>Disk image: | SATA V 0 Cache<br>local:104/Superna_ECA V | e: Default (No cache) ~ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Help                       |   | Advanced 🗌 Add          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Click Add.

The configuration should look similar to this:

| Virtual Machine 101 (igls-vmdk-1) on node 'pve-r210-01' |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Summary   | Add V Remove Edit Res | ze disk Move disk Revert   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| >_ Console  | E Keyboard Layout D   | fault  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Hardware  | Memory 10             | .00 GiB  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Cloud-Init  | Processors 4          | 2 sockets, 2 cores)  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Options   | Display D             | fault  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Task History  | A Hard Disk (sata0)   | local:101/Superna_Eyeglass.2.5.3-18251.x86_64-disk1-pve.qcow2,size=80G |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Monitor   |                       | tio=EE:F5:55:C1:09:19,bridge=vmbr0,tag=1681                            |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Monitor</li> </ul>                             |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Backup  |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13 Replication  |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Snapshots   |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 🛡 Firewall 🛛 🕨  |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Permissions   |                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Start the VM, Connect to Console; you can login with user **ecaadmin** and default password **3y3gl4ss** and proceed with normal post install configuration.

## ECA OVx Conversion Procedure

Create a new VM in Proxmox, taking note of VM ID, you can give it a name for your ease.

General:

| Create: Virtual N | Create: Virtual Machine |                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| General OS        | Hard Disk CPU Memory    | Network Confirm |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Node:             | pve-r210-01             | Resource Pool:  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| VM ID:            | 104                     |                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Name:             | ECA                     |                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

OS: Don't Use any any media, OS : Linux 4.x/3.x Kernel

| Create: Virtual Ma | achine                      |        |           |          |      |                    | $\otimes$ |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|--------|-----------|----------|------|--------------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| General OS         | Hard Disk                   | CPU Me | mory      | Network  | Conf | irm                |           |  |  |  |  |
| O Use CD/DVD o     | lisc image file (i          | so)    | Guest OS: |          |      |                    |           |  |  |  |  |
| Storage:           | local                       |        |           | Type:    |      | Linux              | $\sim$    |  |  |  |  |
| ISO image:         |                             |        | $\sim$    | Version: |      | 4.X/3.X/2.6 Kernel | $\sim$    |  |  |  |  |
| OUse physical C    | O Use physical CD/DVD Drive |        |           |          |      |                    |           |  |  |  |  |
| ● Do not use any   | / media                     |        |           |          |      |                    |           |  |  |  |  |

Hard Disk: Change 'Bus/Device' to SATA, Everything else can be left as defaults, this HD will be removed in a later step.

| Create: Virtual I | Machine       |               |          |         |                    | $\otimes$ |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| General OS        | Hard Disk     | CPU Me        | emory    | Network | Confirm            |           |
| Bus/Device:       | SATA          | ~ 0           | $\hat{}$ | Cache:  | Default (No cache) | ~         |
| Storage:          | VMStorage     |               | $\sim$   |         |                    |           |
| Disk size (GiB):  | 32            |               | $\hat{}$ |         |                    |           |
| Format:           | QEMU image fo | ormat (qcow2) | $\sim$   |         |                    |           |

CPU: 2 Sockets, 2 Cores. Default (kvm64) type was tested

| Create: Vir | tual Ma | chine     |     |          |              |                 | $\otimes$ |
|-------------|---------|-----------|-----|----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------|
| General     | OS      | Hard Disk | CPU | Memory   | Network C    | Confirm         |           |
| Sockets:    | 2       |           |     | $\hat{}$ | Туре:        | Default (kvm64) | $\sim$    |
| Cores:      | 2       | !         |     | $\hat{}$ | Total cores: | 4               |           |
|             |         |           |     |          |              |                 |           |

**Memory:** 16384MB Ram (16G)

| þ | Create: Vir | tual Ma | chine |       |     |            |         |         | $\otimes$ |
|---|-------------|---------|-------|-------|-----|------------|---------|---------|-----------|
|   | General     | OS      | Hard  | Disk  | CPU | Memory     | Network | Confirm |           |
|   | Memory (Mil | B):     |       | 16384 | ļ   | $\Diamond$ |         |         |           |

**Network:** Add an Ethernet adapter (VirtIO Paravirtualized was tested), and a **VLAN tag** if required.

| Create: Virtual Machine |    |           |     |          |              |                          |        |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|----|-----------|-----|----------|--------------|--------------------------|--------|--|--|--|
| General                 | OS | Hard Disk | CPU | Memory   | Network Co   | onfirm                   |        |  |  |  |
| No network device       |    |           |     |          |              |                          |        |  |  |  |
| Bridge:                 | V  | mbr0      |     | $\sim$   | Model:       | VirtIO (paravirtualized) | $\sim$ |  |  |  |
| VLAN Tag:               | n  | o VLAN    |     | $\hat{}$ | MAC address: | auto                     |        |  |  |  |
| Firewall:               |    | ]         |     |          |              |                          |        |  |  |  |

Click on the newly created VM, click Hardware, and then select Hard Disk (scsi0), then click **Detach** and Yes when asked to confirm.

| Summary        | Add ~         Detach         Edit         Resize disk         Move disk         Revert |  |  |
|----------------|--|--|--|
| >_ Console     | 🖃 Keyboard Layout  | Default  |  |
| 🖵 Hardware     | E Memory   | 16.00 GiB                                      |  |
| Cloud-Init     | Processors   | 4 (2 sockets, 2 cores)                         |  |
| A Options      | 🖵 Display  | Default  |  |
|                | OD/DVD Drive (ide2)  | none,media=cdrom                               |  |
| I Task History | Hard Disk (sata0)  | VMStorage:101/vm-101-disk-1.qcow2,size=32G     |  |
| Monitor        | ➡ Network Device (net0)  | virtio=C6:FE:01:0E:FA:91,bridge=vmbr0,tag=1681 |  |
| 🖺 Backup       |  |  |  |

The Hard Disk will drop into an Unused Disk state. Select this Unused Disk and select **Remove** 

|    | Summary      | Add V Remove Edit       | Resize disk Move disk Revert          |
|----|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| >_ | Console      | Keyboard Layout         | Default                               |
| Ģ  | Hardware     | m Memory                | 16.00 GiB                             |
| ٠  | Cloud-Init   | Processors              | 4 (2 sockets, 2 cores)                |
| *  | Ontions      | 🖵 Display               | Default                               |
| ¥  | Options      | OD/DVD Drive (ide2)     | none,media=cdrom                      |
|    | Task History | ➡ Network Device (net0) | virtio=E2:17:71:7D:F7:18,bridge=vmbr0 |
| ۲  | Monitor      | 🖨 Unused Disk 0         | VMStorage:106/vm-106-disk-1.qcow2     |
| B  | Backup       |                         |                                       |

Virtual Machine 106 (GoldenCopy) on node 'pve-r210-01'

Option 1: OVF/VMDK only

Download the VMDK from repo. IF OVA, extract the vmdk from the OVA using an archive program. (7zip, winzip winrar all work).

Transfer the VMDK to Proxmox VE images folder (/var/lib/vz/images)

E.g.

scp Superna\_ECA.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64-disk1-pve.vmdk root@proxmoxip:/var/lib/vz/images

SSH over to the Proxmox HV to perform the following steps.

Convert the image to qcow2:

qemu-img convert -f vmdk Superna\_ECA.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64-disk1.vmdk

-O qcow2 Superna\_ECA.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86\_64.qcow2

You can now **copy (or move)** this qcow to the VMID subfolder from above.

At this point, Proxmox should populate the WebUI with the new drive so it can be simply attached. If it doesn't, manually add the drive by editing the VM config file, stored by default at */etc/pve/qemuserver* and add the following line to the end of the config file:

unused0: local:<id>/<filename>

Where **<ID>** is the VMID noted above and **<filename>** is the name of qcow2 disk to be attached to the VM. E.g.

unused0: local:102/Superna\_Eyeglass.2.5.3-18251.x86\_64-disk1-pve.qcow2

Return to the Proxmox WebUI where you will find the eyeglass boot disk, designated as 'unused'.

Double click on the unused disk to Attach it to the VM:

Bus/Device: SATA 0
| Add: Unused D              | isk        |        | $\otimes$            |
|----------------------------|------------|--------|----------------------|
| Bus/Device:<br>Disk image: | SATA V 0 0 | Cache: | Default (No cache) ~ |
| Help                       |            |        | Advanced 🗌 Add       |

Click Add.

Select the boot order for adjusted device 1 to sata0. In addition to this we require a completely empty second disk. From UI Add > Hard Disk; make sure to choose SATA 1 and disk size minimum 80 GB.

| Add: Hard Disk   | uidia=E9-47-74-7⊡-E7-40- | brida    |        |                    | $\otimes$ |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------|--------|--------------------|-----------|
| Bus/Device:      | SATA V 1                 | $\hat{}$ | Cache: | Default (No cache) | $\sim$    |
| Disk size (GiB): | 80                       | $\hat{}$ |        |                    |           |
| Format:          | QEMU image format (qc    | ~        |        | _                  |           |
| Help             |                          |          |        | Advanced           | Add       |

The configuration should look similar to this:

| Virtual Machine 104   | on node 'pve-r210-01'   |  |
|---|-------------------------|--|
| Summary   | Add V Remove Edit       | Resize disk Move disk Revert                                   |
| - Console   | 🖃 Keyboard Layout       | Default  |
| Hardware  | E Memory                | 16.00 GiB  |
| <ul> <li>Cloud-Init</li> <li>Options</li> <li>Task History</li> </ul> | Processors              | 4 (2 sockets, 2 cores)   |
|   | 🖵 Display               | Default  |
|   | OCD/DVD Drive (ide2)    | none,media=cdrom   |
|   | 🖨 Hard Disk (sata0)     | local:104/Superna_ECA.2.5.7-20285-lp15.1.x86_64.qcow2,size=30G |
| Monitor   | 🖨 Hard Disk (sata1)     | VMStorage:104/vm-104-disk-1.qcow2,size=80G                     |
| 🖺 Backup  | ➡ Network Device (net0) | virtio=92:6C:45:B5:D4:10,bridge=vmbr0,tag=1681                 |
| Replication   |                         |  |

Start the VM, Connect to Console; you can login with user **ecaadmin** and default password **3y3gl4ss** and proceed with post install configuration as follows.

Now, configure the networking setting by specifying an IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, Cluster Name and comma-separated DNS Nameservers manually with

/opt/superna/bin/ovf set-value [-h] KEY=VALUE [KEY=VALUE ...]

For e.g.

/opt.superna.bin/ovf set-value net.eth0.ipv4.ip=192.168.2.227 net.eth0.ipv4.gateway=192.168.1.1 net.eth0.ipv4.netmask=255.255.255.0 vm.clustername=ecatest net.nameservers=172.16.80.7

You can run /opt/superna/bin/ovf definitions to show what properties are supported by this deployment. However you need a separate call for **mode** and **hostname** (which should be same name as vm.clustername)

/opt/superna/bin/ovf set-value --force net.hostname='ecatest' mode='eca'

Once the OVF values are set, check the on boot log on

/var/log/superna\_on\_boot.log

If the tail message appearing like "Waiting for node communication keys from master node ...", you have to manually create */tmp/install-done* 

Then run the following commands

touch /opt/superna/.firstboot echo '3y3gl4ss' > /tmp/ecaadmin\_pw sudo /opt/superna/bin/on\_boot.sh

Let's wait for the firstboot script to complete. You can check the current progress on the screen or on

/var/log/superna\_on\_boot.log

During this **on-boot** process, the script will create a data filesystem on the second disk. Also, sets the networking properties and distributes the configurations and SSH/SSL keys.

Note: If the tail message appearing like "Waiting for node communication keys from master node ...", you have to manually create */tmp/install-done* 

Now, you can verify the installed version with

ecactl version

You'll see something like this:

ecaadmin@ecatest-1:~> ecactl version Eyeglass Cluster Appliance -- version 2.5.7-20285

You might need to configure /opt/superna/eca/eca-env-

common.conf as determined by the environment like the Isilon IP address, etc.

© Superna LLC

# **12.** Ransomware Defender Enterprise Airgap Agent VM Install Guide

- Introduction to this Guide
- System Requirements
- IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING ADDING CLUSTERS TO AirGap Agent VM READ-ME FIRST
- Supported OneFS releases
- Prerequisites
- Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent Firewall Port Requirements
- Download Eyeglass (Mandatory)
- Deploy the Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent Appliance (Mandatory)
- Steps to Deploy the OVF with vSphere Client (Mandatory)
- Upgrade Vault Agent Procedures
  - Method #1 in-band maintenance mode upgrade procedure
  - Method #2 Physical Vault VM Access

### Introduction to this Guide

Use this document to get your new Ransomware Defender single VM into a secure AirGap vault ESX host.

#### System Requirements

- 1. vSphere 6.0 or higher appliance appliance requires
- 2. 4 vCPU

- 3. 16 GB RAM
- 30G OS partition plus 80 GB disk Total disk size in VMware 110G

# IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING ADDING CLUSTERS TO AirGap Agent VM READ-ME FIRST

- Supported OneFS releases
- 1. Please refer to the <u>Release Notes</u> for the Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent.

Prerequisites

- 1. ESX host installed
- 2. ensure esx host time is set correctly and time zone is correct
- Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent VM should have time sync to VM checked

Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent Firewall Port

Requirements

- 1. The vault agent requires
  - a. port 8080 https from vault agent --> to the vault cluster management pool
  - b. port 23 ssh from vault agent --> to the vault cluster management pool

#### Download Eyeglass (Mandatory)

1. Download ECA zip from Superna web site following instructions here Latest ECA Download

2.

#### Deploy the Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent Appliance (Mandatory)

Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent is delivered in an OVF format for easy deployment in your esx environment. Deploy the OVF and then follow the wizard to setup networking for this Linux appliance. You will need to know:

- 1. subnet and network required so that appliance will have IP connectivity to the PowerScale clusters that it's managing, and the users that are using it
- 2. IP address for the appliance
- 3. Gateway

## Steps to Deploy the OVF with vSphere

## Client (Mandatory)

OVF Deployment steps :

**Step 1**: Download an ECA OVF zip file from Latest Appliance Download.

**Step 2**: Unzip the contents of the zip file from Step 1 onto a computer with vSphere web url.

Superna\_ECA\_VaultAgent.2.5.8-21222-lp15.3.x86\_64 Superna\_ECA.2.5.8-21222-lp15.3.x86\_64-disk1.vmdk

Superna\_ECA\_VaultAgent.2.5.8-21222-Ip15.3.x86\_64.mf

Superna\_ECA\_VaultAgent.2.5.8-21222-Ip15.3.x86\_64.ovf

Step 3 : Login to the esx host with appropriate login credentials.

**Step 4 :** Single click on VMware vSphere client on the Desktop. Login with appropriate login credentials.

**Step 5 :** Once logged in to VMware client, you can see different Menus on the top left of the application. Next, go to the File menu and select Deploy OVF Template.

**Step 6 :** Browse to the location of OVF files you've downloaded and unzipped in step 1 and 2. Select OK and then Next.

Next, You will see the OVF template details. Verify the details and proceed by selecting Next. Notice download size to be under allocated disk size limit.

Step 7 : Choose a unique name for the virtual machine and selectInventory location for the deployed template. Once done, select Next.Step 8 : Select the host/cluster where you want to run the deployedtemplate and then Next.

Step 9: Select the Resource pool within which you wish to deploy the template.

**Step 10 :** Select a destination storage for virtual machine files, select Next

**Step 11 :** Select Disk Format for the datastore you selected in previous step.

**Step 12 :** Enter the networking properties for the Eyeglass appliance VM in the OVF properties display. Replace with correct settings for your environment.

**Step 13 :** When done, verify your settings and deploy the OVF **After deployment:** 

**Step 1** : Power On the virtual machine.

- 1. The Ransomware Defender AirGap Vault Agent appliance is deployed with following default admin user password:
- 2. ssh to eyeglass vm as ecaadmin
  - a. **sudo systemctl status superna-on-boot** (enter admin password and verify the first boot process completes)
  - b. default login and password: ecaadmin/3y3gl4ss
  - c. set the OVF mode
    - i. ovf set-value -f mode=vault-agent
  - d. sudo -s
  - e. umount /opt/superna/mnt/zk-ramdisk

- f. remove the tmpfs /opt/superna/mnt/zk-ramdisk tmpfs nodev,nosuid,noexec,nodiratime,size=512M
   0 0 line from /etc/fstab
  - i. nano /etc/fstab
  - ii. remove the line above
  - iii. with ctrl key +k on the line
  - iv. ctrl key + x to save and exit
  - v. done
- 3. Can also be used to login to the SSH session
- 4. Mandatory: It is highly recommended to reset the default password after the appliance is deployed.
  - a. Type passwd
  - b. enter new password and confirm password
- 5. Setup Time zone (Mandatory)
  - a. Follow Animated GIF below to set using YAST
  - b. ssh as admin user,
  - c. sudo -s
  - d. Enter admin password
  - e. type yast
  - f. select menu system --> date and time
  - g. set the time zone
  - h. Done
- 6. Cluster startup
  - a. exit if you are still root user
  - b. whoami (make sure you are ecaadmin)
  - c. ecactl cluster up
  - d. done

# Upgrade Vault Agent Procedures

This section covers how to upgrade the vault agent software. Two methods are available depending on vault operation mode. Method #1 in-band maintenance window option requires the vault agent to have in-band maintenance mode enabled, Method #2 requires console access or mouse keyboard access to esx host inside the vault, this requires physical access to the vault.

Method #1 - in-band maintenance mode upgrade procedure

- 1. Requirements:
  - a. Enable Vault agent in band maintenance mode see guide.
  - b. 2 Factor authentication configured on the eyeglass VM and the vault agent vm. See guide here.
- 2. Upgrade Procedures
  - a. Download the vault agent upgrade file from support https://support.superna.net. Recored the md5 checksum from the download menu.
  - b. Compute the md5 checksum after download and compare to the md5 checksum posted on the download site.
  - c. Using winscp copy the run file to the production Powerscale connected to the vault network
  - d. Request the vault maintenance mode window with this command for a 45 minute maintenance window
    - i. igls airgap vaultaccessrequest --interval=45
    - ii. The vault agent checks in every 2 hour for maintenance requests on the hour example 8 am, 10 am etc..
    - iii. At the next time interval check prepare for the upgrade following steps below.

- e. ssh to the production cluster with the user that copied the upgrade file to the cluster. This example assumes the admin cluster user with a home directory of /ifs/home/admin.
  - 1 minute after the hour, test access to the with scp /ifs/home/admin/<upgrade file name> eyeglass@x.x.x.x:<upgrade file name> (x.x.x.x is IP of the vault cluster interface). If the vault door is open a password prompt will be presented, if a timeout message appears the vault has not opened for maintenance yet, retry the scp copy.
  - ii. Once the file is copied to the vault login to the vault over ssh
    - 1. ssh eyeglass@x.x.x.x
    - scp /ifs/home/eyeglass/<upgrade file name> ecaadmin@y.y.y.y:<upgrade file name> (y.y.y.y is the vault agent VM) enter ecaadmin password to complete the copy.
  - iii. SSH to the vault agent VM
    - 1. ssh ecaadmin@y.y.y.y
  - iv. Shutdown vault agent
    - 1. ecactl cluster down
  - v. upgrade vault agent
    - chmod 777 /home/ecaadmin/<upgrade file name>
    - 2. ./home/ecaadmin/<upgrade file name>

3. wait for upgrade to complete

#### vi. start vault cluster software

- 1. ecactl cluster up
- vii. Check remaining time for the timed maintenance before the vault network is auto closed
  - 1. ecactl airgap checkopen
- viii. Verify upgrade
  - 1. type docker ps (verify all containers are running and none are restarting)
- ix. Check configuration
  - 1. ecactl isilons list
  - 2. ecactl airgap list
- x. Close the vault to exit the ssh session
  - 1. ecactl vault close
  - 2. The ssh session will timeout once the vault closes
- xi. Upgrade Complete

Method #2 - Physical Vault VM Access

#### 1. Requirements

- a. Bastion host with access to vault management switch inside the vault
- b. OR physical access with laptop to management switch inside the vault

- c. Secured vault laptop dedicated for vault access. This laptop should be physically secured when not in use with limited personnel access to the laptop. Change control to gain access to the secured laptop.
- d. Dedicated USB stick for up
- 2. Upgrade Procedures
  - Download the vault agent upgrade file from support https://support.superna.net. Recored the md5 checksum from the download menu.
  - b. Compute the md5 checksum after download and compare to the md5 checksum posted on the download site.
  - c. Copy the upgrade file to a USB stick.
  - d. Copy the upgrade file from the USB stick to the to the management laptop.
  - e. Winscp the upgrade file to the vault agent using the ecaadmin user
  - f. SSH to the vault agent VM
    - i. ssh ecaadmin@y.y.y.y (or use ssh utility)
  - g. Shutdown vault agent
    - i. ecactl cluster down
  - h. upgrade vault agent
    - i. chmod 777 /home/ecaadmin/<upgrade file name>
    - ii. ./home/ecaadmin/<upgrade file name>
    - iii. wait for upgrade to complete
  - i. Start vault cluster software

- i. ecactl cluster up
- j. Verify upgrade
  - i. type docker ps (verify all containers are running and none are restarting)
- k. Check configuration
  - i. ecactl isilons list
  - ii. ecactl airgap list
- I. Test Vault Connectivity to production cluster
  - i. ecactl airgap check --prod <protected cluster name>
  - ii. Verify successful communications

m. Upgrade Complete

© Superna LLC